Contacting BMC Software

Several methods are available for contacting BMC Software.

You can access the BMC Software website at http://www.bmc.com. From this website, you can obtain information about the company, its products, corporate offices, special events, and career opportunities.

United States and Canada

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Telephone</th>
<th>Fax</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMC SOFTWARE INC</td>
<td>1 713 918 8800</td>
<td>1 713 918 8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2103 CITYWEST BLVD</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOUSTON TX 77042-2827 USA</td>
<td>1 800 841 2031</td>
<td>1 800 841 2031</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Outside United States and Canada

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Telephone</th>
<th>Fax</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+01 713 918 8800</td>
<td>+01 713 918 8000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© Copyright 1994-2016 BMC Software, Inc.

BMC, BMC Software, the BMC logo, the BMC Software logo, and other BMC marks are the exclusive properties of BMC Software, Inc. and are registered or may be registered in the U.S. and in other countries. BladeLogic and other BladeLogic marks are the exclusive properties of BladeLogic, Inc. and are registered or may be registered in the U.S. and in other countries. All other trademarks or registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

IBM, IMS, IMS/ESA, MVS, OS/390, RACF, VTAM, and z/OS are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

The information included in this documentation is the proprietary and confidential information of BMC Software, Inc., its affiliates, or licensors. Your use of this information is subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable End User License agreement for the product and to the proprietary and restricted rights notices included in the product documentation.

Restricted rights legend

U.S. Government Restricted Rights to Computer Software. UNPUBLISHED—RIGHTS RESERVED UNDER THE COPYRIGHT LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES. Use, duplication, or disclosure of any data and computer software by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions, as applicable, set forth in FAR Section 52.227-14, DFARS 252.227-7013, DFARS 252.227-7014, DFARS 252.227-7015, and DFARS 252.227-7025, as amended from time to time. Contractor/Manufacturer is BMC SOFTWARE INC, 2103 CITYWEST BLVD, HOUSTON TX 77042-2827, USA. Any contract notices should be sent to this address.
Customer support

Support website
You can obtain technical support from BMC 24 hours a day, 7 days a week at http://www.bmc.com/support. From this website, you can:

- Read overviews about support services and programs that BMC offers
- Find the most current information about BMC products
- Search a database for problems similar to yours and possible solutions
- Order or download product documentation
- Download products and maintenance
- Report a problem or ask a question
- Subscribe to receive proactive e-mail alerts
- Find worldwide BMC support center locations and contact information, including e-mail addresses, fax numbers, and telephone numbers

Support by telephone or e-mail
In the United States and Canada, if you need technical support and do not have access to the web, call 1 800 537 1813 or send an e-mail message to customer_support@bmc.com. (In the subject line, enter SupID:yourSupportContractID, such as SupID:12345). Outside the United States and Canada, contact your local support center for assistance.

Before contacting BMC
Have the following information available so that Customer Support can begin working on your issue immediately:

- Product information
  - Product name
  - Product version (release number)
  - License number and password (trial or permanent)

- Operating system and environment information
  - Machine type
  - Operating system type, version, and service pack or other maintenance level such as PUT or PTF
  - System hardware configuration
  - Serial numbers
  - Related software (database, application, and communication) including type, version, and service pack or maintenance level

- Sequence of events leading to the problem

- Commands and options that you used

- Messages received (and the time and date that you received them)
  - Product error messages
  - Messages from the operating system
  - Messages from related software
License key and password information

If you have questions about your license key or password, contact Customer Support through one of the following methods:

- Send an e-mail message to customer_support@bmc.com. (In the Subject line, enter SupID:yourSupportContractID, such as SupID:12345.)
- In the United States and Canada, call 1 800 537 1813. Outside the United States and Canada, contact your local support center for assistance.
## Contents

**About this book** ........................................................................................................................................ 13
- Related publications ................................................................................................................................ 13
- Conventions ................................................................................................................................................ 14
- General Document Information .................................................................................................................. 14
- IMS Versions ................................................................................................................................................. 15
- Task Structure ............................................................................................................................................... 16
- Syntax statements .......................................................................................................................................... 17
- Syntax diagrams ........................................................................................................................................... 17
- Summary of changes ....................................................................................................................................... 19

**Chapter 1** Introduction to ETA .................................................................................................................. 21
- Overview ........................................................................................................................................................ 21
- Features ......................................................................................................................................................... 22

**Chapter 2** ETA Online Interface .................................................................................................................. 29
- ISPF Conventions ........................................................................................................................................... 29
  - Panel Layout ............................................................................................................................................... 29
  - Scroll Indicators ......................................................................................................................................... 30
  - Field Value Prompts .................................................................................................................................. 31
  - Action Bar .................................................................................................................................................. 31
- Online Help .................................................................................................................................................... 32
  - Panel-Level and Field-Level Help ............................................................................................................. 33
  - Message Help ............................................................................................................................................. 33
  - Message Help Index .................................................................................................................................... 34
  - Using the Message Help Index .................................................................................................................. 34
- Interface Preferences ....................................................................................................................................... 36
  - Task Instructions for Specifying Preferences ........................................................................................ 36
    - Specifying Preferences for Confirmations ............................................................................................... 36
    - Specifying Preferences for Startup ....................................................................................................... 38
    - Specifying Preferences for the Colors and Field Attributes of the ETA Interface .................................... 39
    - Specifying Preferences for the Function Keys ....................................................................................... 40

**Chapter 3** IMS system information that ETA requires .................................................................................. 41
- Preparing to use ETA ...................................................................................................................................... 41
- Task Instructions for System Information ................................................................................................... 41
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 4</th>
<th>IMS Customization by IMSID</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Printer and Unsolicited Output Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Unsolicited Output Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Default</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal Type Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Logon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Logon Options—ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Logon Options—Terminal Type</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Logon Options—TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logoff Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Logoff Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Logoff Options—ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Logoff Options—TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosignon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM/USER Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Autosignon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Autosignon Options—LTERM/USER Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM/USER Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Signon Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Signon Options—LTERM/USER Options</td>
<td>........................................ Options</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executing IMS operator commands online</td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Administration Features</td>
<td>307</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing User Access Profiles</td>
<td>308</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displaying and Zapping IMS Control Region Storage</td>
<td>310</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text</td>
<td>311</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refreshing Signon Return Code Text and User Messages</td>
<td>316</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table</td>
<td>317</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refreshing Command Security Features</td>
<td>320</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utility Features</td>
<td>322</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute IMS Command Panel</td>
<td>322</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh Features</td>
<td>322</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions for Utility Features</td>
<td>323</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing IMS Commands from within the ETA Online Interface</td>
<td>324</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals</td>
<td>325</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic Features</td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS Dispatcher Trace for IMS Control Region</td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Dynamic Terminal Trace Feature for IMS Control Region</td>
<td>329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS Control Region Documentation</td>
<td>329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMCXLINK Diagnostics Provided by ETA</td>
<td>331</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO/ISPF Diagnostics and ETA</td>
<td>332</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem Determination Documentation</td>
<td>333</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Appendix A Sample Configurations**

| Sample IMS System Configurations | 335 |
| System Configuration Form | 336 |
| Sample IMS System Configuration 1 | 338 |
| Sample IMS System Configuration 2 | 339 |
| Sample IMS System Configuration 3 | 340 |
| Sample IMS System Configuration 4 | 341 |
| Task Instructions for Sample IMS System Configurations | 343 |
| Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 1 | 343 |
| Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 2 | 347 |
| Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 3 | 352 |
| Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 4 | 357 |
| Sample Logon Configurations | 363 |
| Sample Logon Configuration 1 | 363 |
| Sample Logon Configuration 2 | 363 |
| Sample Logon Configuration 3 | 364 |
| Task Instructions for Sample Logon Configurations | 364 |
| Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 1 | 365 |
About this book

This book contains detailed information about the associated product or products. This preface explains the special conventions that the book uses, and how to access related publications.

To use this book, you should be familiar with the Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature.

**Note**
The December 2015 edition of this book replaces all previous editions of the book. This edition applies to version 3.6.00 and later of the ETA product unless otherwise indicated in subsequent books. For complete information about the book editions for this product, see the applicable release notes.

Related publications

From the BMC Support Central website, you can use the following methods to access related publications that support your product or solution:

- Link to the BMC Documentation Center to browse documentation sets ([http://www.bmc.com/available/documentation-center.html](http://www.bmc.com/available/documentation-center.html) or, for secured documentation sets, [http://www.bmc.com/available/documentation-center-secure.html](http://www.bmc.com/available/documentation-center-secure.html)).

- View Quick Course videos (short overviews of selected product concepts, tasks, or features), which are available from the following locations:
  - Documentation Center (primary center and secured center)
  - BMC Mainframe YouTube channel ([https://www.youtube.com/user/BMCSoftwareMainframe](https://www.youtube.com/user/BMCSoftwareMainframe))

Products with online interfaces also offer online Help via the F1 key or, for graphical user interfaces (GUIs), via a Help button.

**Tip**
If you prefer hardcopy documentation, you can order it from your BMC sales representative or from Support Central. Also, from Support Central you can subscribe to receive proactive e-mail alerts when BMC issues notices.

### Conventions

This document uses the following special conventions:

- All syntax, operating system terms, and literal examples are presented in this typeface.

- Variable text in path names, system messages, or syntax is displayed in italic text: `tests/instance/file

- Menu sequences use a symbol to convey the sequence. For example, Actions => Create Test instructs you to choose the Create Test command from the Actions menu.

### General Document Information

Panels are displayed in this guide only to explain a complex task or to indicate where fields or options on the panel vary, depending on the options specified. The display of some panels in the product can be affected by the ALTVIEW command. Your panel display and field names may differ from those in the manual. All the fields are still available despite which view you choose to display.

The ALTVIEW command toggles the display of panels between two different views. The panel flows documented in the majority of this document are based on View 1 in the following figure. However, the panel flows documented in “Sample Configurations” on page 335 are based on View 2.

**Figure 1: View 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>View</th>
<th>Refresh</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Help</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ETA</th>
<th>Edit IMSID Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
yyy indicates your user ID or a standard high-level qualifier on the panels. In the text of this document, the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS data sets are referred to by the last two qualifiers of the data set name only. For example, the data set BMCNODE.ETACNTL is called ETACNTL. Your names may differ.

The function keys, as used in this manual, are the default EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS definitions of the function keys.

Certain fields in the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS online interface allow the use of generic parameters. In these fields, certain characters (* and %) can be substituted for one or more characters in a parameter. See the IBM publication IMS Operators Reference for information on the use of generic parameters.

The term IMS refers to all supported versions and releases of IMS/VS and IMS/ESA. The specific product name, version, and release numbers are noted only when this information is significant.

The term MVS refers to all supported versions and releases of the IBM MVS, OS/390, and z/OS operating systems. The specific product name, version, and release numbers are noted only when this information is significant.

**IMS Versions**

In many instances in this guide, an EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS load module or PDS member which is referenced will actually be one of different versions.
because EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS is designed to work with all supported versions of IMS. In all such occurrences, the last character of the member name will be replaced with an n. This character indicates that the actual member referenced depends upon the IMS version. For example, the n is replaced by 5 under IMS Version 13.1 or 6 under IMS Version 14.1.

Task Structure

The tasks documented in this guide are grouped by function. Each group of tasks begins with an overview. BMC Software recommends that you read this information the first time that you perform a task. Although the overview sections present some reference information, the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS online help provides complete reference information.

Task instructions follow each overview section. These instructions are designed primarily to help you use the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS online interface; it is assumed that you will use the instructions at a terminal. Task instructions are formatted consistently, and they contain the following elements:

- The first paragraph of the section presents the goals of the task and a general description of how to perform it. Use this section to quickly identify the task that you need to perform.

- **Panel Flow**—This diagram presents a visual summary of the panels in the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS interface you will see while completing the task. The figure on page 25 explains the graphic conventions used in panel flow diagrams.

- **Before You Begin**—This section lists the tasks or actions that must be completed before you begin this task. Use this section as a checklist of task prerequisites.

- **To do task**—This section provides the instructions on how to accomplish the task. In this guide, there are two categories of steps: sequential and conditional. A sequential step is a step that is performed in the specified order. It can have substeps. A conditional step is a step which uses a decision table to show the available actions and their results.

- **Where to Go from Here**—This section directs you to the task or tasks that you can perform next.

If you are using this guide for the first time, read the task overviews and the procedures in their entirety before performing a task. After you are familiar with the tasks, reading the summary or reviewing the task overview may be all that you need to perform the task.
Syntax statements

This topic explains conventions for showing syntax statements.

A sample statement follows:

```
COMMAND KEYWORD1 [KEYWORD2 | KEYWORD3] KEYWORD4={YES | NO} fileName...
```

The following table explains conventions for syntax statements and provides examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Items in italic type represent variables that you must replace with a name or value. If a variable is represented by two or more words, initial capitals distinguish the second and subsequent words.</td>
<td>alias&lt;br&gt;databaseDirectory&lt;br&gt;serverHostName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brackets indicate optional items. Do not type the brackets when you enter the option. A comma means that you can choose one or more of the listed options. You must use a comma to separate the options if you choose more than one option.</td>
<td>[tableName, columnName, field]&lt;br&gt;[-full, -incremental, -level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Braces indicate that at least one of the enclosed items is required. Do not type the braces when you enter the item.</td>
<td>{DBDName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A vertical bar means that you can choose only one of the listed items. In the example, you would choose either commit or cancel.</td>
<td>{commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An ellipsis indicates that you can repeat the previous item or items as many times as necessary.</td>
<td>columnName...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Syntax diagrams

The following figure shows the standard format for syntax diagrams:
The following example illustrates the syntax for a hypothetical DELETE statement. Because the FROM keyword, alias variable, and WHERE clause are optional, they appear below the main command line. In contrast, the tableName variable appears on the command line because the table name is required. If the statement includes a WHERE clause, the clause must contain a search condition or a CURRENT OF clause. (The searchCondition variable appears on the main line for the WHERE clause, indicating that this choice is required.)

The following guidelines provide additional information about syntax diagrams:

- Read diagrams from left to right and from top to bottom.
- A recursive (left-pointing) arrow above a stack indicates that you may choose more than one item in the stack.
- An underlined item is a default option.
- If a diagram shows punctuation marks, parentheses, or similar symbols, you must enter them as part of the syntax.
- In general, IBM commands, keywords, clauses, and data types are displayed in uppercase letters. However, if an item can be shortened, the minimum required
portion might be shown in uppercase letters, with the remainder in lowercase (for example, CANcel).

- The following conventions apply to variables in syntax diagrams:
  - Variables are typically displayed in lowercase letters and are always italicized.
  - If a variable is represented by two or more words, initial capitals distinguish the second and subsequent words (for example, databaseName).

Summary of changes

The following enhancements are added to version 3.6.00 of the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS(ETA) product:

- Support for IMS Version 14.1
  ETA now supports Version 14.1 of the IBM IMS system.

- Support for TCP/IP ISC
  ETA now supports TCP/IP ISC and ISPF changes to support TCP/IP ISC descriptors.

- ISPF/Batch command interface enhancement
  ETA now allows extended command input lengths from ISPF/Batch command interfaces.

- Enhanced support for type-2 commands
  ETA now supports type-2 commands routed to member components such as the OM address space and ODBM/IMS Connect.
Introduction to ETA

This chapter provides a high-level description of the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA) product.

Overview

ETA replaces or complements the Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature available with IMS. ETA’s online interface and dynamic change capabilities allow you to customize ETO systems more quickly, eliminate IMS restarts for system customization changes, and provide a central repository for customization information.

ETA allows you to customize your ETO systems by using a CUA-compliant ISPF interface. Communication from ISPF and batch to the IMS control region(s) is provided through a started task called BMCXLINK. Communications between ISPF, batch, and BMCXLINK use VTAM communications. Communications between BMCXLINK and the IMS control regions use the cross-system coupling facility (XCF). Therefore, ISPF and BMCXLINK do not have to reside on the same MVS image. The ETA code in the IMS control region dynamically changes the applicable IMS and ETO parameters, making the customizations immediately available for use in the creation of dynamic terminals and printers.
Figure 3 on page 22 shows how one ETA session can be used to customize multiple ETO systems even if the ETO systems are located on different MVS systems.

Figure 3: Overview of ETA Operation

Features

ETA offers the following features:

Note

ETA no longer requires use of the IBM IMS Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature. For more information, see GUID-63B248A5-C546-48B7-A16F-3DBCEB1D305C.xml#GUID-63B248A5-C546-48B7-A16F-3DBCEB1D305C.

- Online interface that allows you to dynamically change all options available through ETO descriptors and exits
- Online panels that simplify the process of creating or modifying descriptors
- Extensive online help
- Translate Subsystem Services (TSS) feature; a generalized table lookup feature that can be used to specify any of the options available through ETA and ETO
- Ability to dynamically activate, deactivate, reload, or check the status of user exits
- ETA allows systems using IMS to join a user-defined XCF group during IMS initialization. ETA Group options enable a user-defined group of IMS systems to be treated as one IMS system. Enabling IMS systems to join a group allows you to perform many functions simultaneously for all systems in the group.
Note
The only restriction is that the IMS systems must all reside in the same XCF complex.

- Enhanced /DIS ETA OPTIONS command. Use the /DIS ETA OPTIONS [ NODE | USER ] name command to determine where certain ETA/IMS values were derived for a particular NODE or USER. The values displayed are:
  - Automatic logoff (ALOT) elimination
  - MFS test
  - LTERM/USER name
  - DFS3649A
  - DFS3650I
  - Response mode
  - Message delete (MSGDEL)
  - Automatic logoff (ALOT)
  - Automatic signoff (ASOT)

- Enhanced ETA descriptor editor processing allows multiple descriptor activities to be performed in a list. The descriptor information is now internally saved in a format compatible with ETO descriptors (no longer RECFM=VB). This functionality enables the ETA descriptor member to be copied to the IMS.PROCLIB, or the IMS.PROCLIB could be used as the ETA descriptor library. ETACNTL member ETA#ALOC will allocate the ETA descriptor PDS.

- Support of several IMS initialization options provided in IMS exit DFSINTX0. The initialization options supported by ETA are:
  - Password re-verification during IMS signon
  - Alternate ALOT=0 processing
  - VTAM generic resource processing
  - Resource sharing for ISC in Resource Manager
  - Allow a SLU3 device to log on as a SLU1 or 3270P

This functionality is accessed via option 16 from the Edit IMSID Options panel.
■ /TEST MFS is allowed to be set during TSS processing for unsolicited output, logon, autosignon, and signon

■ Automatic /DEQ of queued messages during:
  — Logoff for static SLU2 and 3270 device types
  — Signoff for dynamic SLU2 and 3270 device types

■ Support for the IMS non-discardable message exit (DFSNDMX0). If you currently use this IMS exit, you may be able to replace its functionality via option 15 from the Edit IMSID Options panel.

■ RACF signon is allowed to be performed during autosignon processing for dynamic 3270, SLU1 console, SLU2, SLUP, and 3600/Finance devices. During autosignon, a RACF ACEE control block will be created using the name specified in the IMSID autosignon option, or from the AUTOSIGNON TSS table. You can create TSS table entries to allow a unique RACF ACEE for every device during autosignon.

■ Ability to display a specific MFS format following a user signon failure based on the signon failure return code. Prior to this enhancement, the DFS3649 format would re-display.

■ ETA IMS command panel (ETA Main Menu option 4) now allows up to eight IMSIDs or ETA group names to be entered as command targets. Also, you can enter up to three commands simultaneously.

■ Enhanced Edit IMSID Options panel with an alternate view option. This view allows navigation to a specific panel within any option.

■ An additional column in the ETA RCNT TSS table type disallows destination creation, if desired

■ Enhanced and simplified JCL used to perform various ETA functions in batch. Several new batch jobs have been created to provide functions not previously available in ETA.

■ Special options for logon processing with the following capabilities:
  — Allow /TEST MFS to be set during TSS processing for logon
  — Provide VTAM USERDATA for SLUP and 3600/Finance devices
  — Fail logon when the number of terminals exceeds a specified limit
  — Propagate user ID from VTAM USERDATA to IMS
  — Propagate password information from VTAM USERDATA to IMS
— Modify the LOGON descriptor selection algorithm
— Specify an ETA default LOGON descriptor
— Provide the VTAM-defined node name to IMS when session managers are used
— Search VTAM USERDATA for a format to replace the DFS3649A or DFS3650I format

■ Special options for signon processing with the following capabilities:
  — Allow /TEST MFS to be set during TSS processing for signon
  — Use the node name or any name you specify for LTERMs and USERs
  — Allow multiple signons per user ID
  — Bypass signon security for printers
  — Modify the USER descriptor selection algorithm
  — Automatically /EXIT conversations from a previous session
  — Automatically /DEQUEUE messages from a previous session
  — Deactivate response mode option remaining from a previous session
  — Use the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERMs
  — Retain LTERM and USER structures after signoff

■ Autosignon feature with the following capabilities:
  — Allow users to access IMS without signing on to the system
  — Allow /TEST MFS to be set during TSS processing for autosignon

■ Ability to replace the DFS3649A and DFS3650I messages with any of the following options:
  — User format
  — DFS2002 message (with user format, if supplied)
  — User message (with user format, if supplied)
  — Blank screen
  — DFS058I message (with user format, if supplied—DFS3650I only)
— Terminal logoff (DFS3649A only)
— User-defined ETA Greetings message exit
— User format by signon return code

■ Printer and Unsolicited Output feature with the following capabilities:
  — Control over the creation of unknown destinations
  — Automatic creation of printer control blocks when printer LTERM and USER structures are created (without the /OPNDST command that ETO otherwise requires)
  — Allow /TEST MFS to be set during through the Printer and Unsolicited Output feature

■ IMS command enhancements that improve your ability to monitor and control the creation of dynamic terminals, descriptors, printers, LTERMs, USERs, and TSS tables:
  — /ASSIGN command enhancements that redirect output by dynamically changing IMS autologon data
  — /DISPLAY command enhancements that provide additional information about dynamic terminals, printers, descriptors, LTERMs, USERs, and TSS tables
  — /SECURE command enhancements that disable logon and/or signon privileges temporarily

■ IMS /CHAnge command enhancements that allow deletion of STSN control blocks without performing an IMS cold start.

■ Diagnostic facilities

■ Descriptive text that replaces signon return codes

■ Online user message editor and signon return code text editor

■ IMS storage display and zap feature

■ Online and batch features for issuing IMS commands from within a TSO session

■ Internal ETA security feature that restricts the use of ETA to authorized users

■ TSS option that simplifies the specification of MSNAME information needed for Multiple Systems Coupling (MSC)

■ Feature that restricts the use of IMS command parameters
- Ability to dynamically change the system-wide default values for autologoff (ALOT), autosignoff (ASOT), and Dead Letter Queue (DLQT) intervals

- Enhanced Command Security feature that allows you to implement IMS command security within the IMS control region or the DCCTL region by command name and the first keyword within the command

- Automatically exit held or non-held conversations when the specified time interval is reached
ETA Online Interface

This chapter describes the ISPF conventions used in the ETA online interface, how to customize the ETA online interface, and how to access ETA online help.

ISPF Conventions

An ISPF interface provides online access to all ETA features. All panels, pull-down menus, and pop-up windows in the interface conform to IBM’s CUA standards.

Panel Layout

The following figure shows a typical ETA panel and its components.

**Figure 4: ETA Panel Components**

ETA panels include the following components:
Action Bar

Each ETA panel has an action bar across the top of the panel. The selections on the action bar allow you to access pull-down menus for navigational or processing options. See “Action Bar” on page 31 for information on action bar selections, conventions used for selections, and the options available from each selection.

Command Area

You can type any valid ISPF command in the Command area. Depending on your ISPF settings, the Command area can be located at the top or the bottom of the panel.

Data Entry Heading

Each data entry field or group of fields is preceded by a heading that indicates the subject and the type of action you can take. These headings are frequently used as a point of reference for task instructions.

Feature Title

This title identifies the ETA Primary Menu, submenus, and general ETA features that data entry and submenu panels allow you to use or customize; for example, descriptor processing options or IMSID options. This title remains the same for all data entry panels related to an ETA feature.

Selection Field

When ETA presents a numbered list of options from which you can choose, a one- or two-character field appears beside the first option. This selection field is often identified with a heading, as shown in Figure 4 on page 29. In some cases, because of space constraints, the word Selection does not appear above the selection field.

Scroll Indicators

When the Scroll field and other scroll indicators appear on a panel, you can use the appropriate function keys to display additional information on ETA data entry panels.

The More: < - + > display continuation prompt appears below the Scroll field at the top of the panel when all of the available data cannot be displayed on the current panel.

The display continuation prompt has the following components:

- indicates that F7 (UP) will display more data.
+ indicates that F8 (DOWN) will display additional data.

< (TSS tables only) indicates that F10 (LEFT) will display additional data.

> (TSS tables only) indicates that F11 (RIGHT) will display additional data.

If all available information fits on the panel, the display continuation prompt is not displayed.

**Field Value Prompts**

ETA panel fields that are followed by a plus sign (+), as shown in the following figure, allow you to display a pop-up window that provides a selection list of valid values. To view this selection list, advance the cursor to the prompt field and press F4, or use the PROMPT command.

**Figure 5: Panel with Prompt Field**

You can use the ETA action bar to navigate and customize the ETA online interface. The action bar also allows you to activate the ETA online help features.

The action bar contains the following selections:

- **feature–Submenu** appears only on submenus and data entry panels. It is a navigational shortcut for accessing any panel available from a submenu.

- **File** provides the following options:
  
  — **Cancel** allows you to return to the previous panel in the ETA online interface without saving your data entry changes.

  — **Exit** has the same effect as the END command or pressing F3.
— *Save* allows you to save data entry changes at any time.

- *Help* provides the following options:

  — *Help for Help* provides information on using the ETA online help system.

  — *Extended Help* provides panel- or field-level help, depending on the location of the cursor.

  — *Messages* displays an index that allows you to select online help information for any ETA error message.

  — *About* displays information about ETA.

    See “Online Help” on page 32 for additional information.

- *Menu* is a navigational shortcut for accessing any submenu available from the ETA Primary Menu.

- *Options* provides the following ETA interface customization options:

  — *Preferences* allows you to change confirmation values, or display the ETA logo panel at ETA interface start-up.

  — *Colors* allows you to change the colors and other field attributes used in the ETA online interface.

  — *Function keys* displays a keylist utility that allows you to modify the functions for the ETA function keys.

  — Other options are available depending on which panel is displayed.

  See “Interface Preferences” on page 36 for more information.

**Online Help**

This section discusses the following subjects:

- Panel-level and field-level help

- Help for error messages

- Message help index
Panel-Level and Field-Level Help

ETA provides explanations of all panels and fields in the ETA interface.

Panel-level help displays a pop-up window that explains the purpose of the panel, provides information about using the panel, and provides a selection list that allows you to view descriptions of the fields available on the panel. Field-level help displays a pop-up window that describes the purpose of the field. Help is also available for the action bar.

See “Using the Message Help Index” on page 34 for information on using online help.

Prompts that provide valid values for a field are not considered a part of the help feature. See “Field Value Prompts” on page 31 for information on using this feature.

The type of help displayed when you activate the help feature depends on the cursor’s position:

- Panel-level help is displayed if you activate the help feature with the cursor on the Command area or any part of a panel other than the action bar or a data entry field.
- Field-level help is displayed if you activate the help feature with the cursor on a data entry field.

You can activate the help feature by performing any of the following actions:

- Press F1.
- Select the Extended help option from the Help pull-down menu.
- Type HELP in the Command area.

Message Help

You can activate message help by performing any of the following actions:

- Selecting the Message Help option from the Help pull-down menu
- Typing one of the following commands in the Command area:
  - MESSAGE
  - MSG
— **MSG nnnnnn**, where *nnnnnn* represents the numerical digits of the BMC Software error message. For example, BMCETA258003E would be specified as *258003*. You can use generic specifications as well. For example, typing *25%34* could result in the following list of messages: BMCETA259340E, BMCETA259341E, BMCETA259342E, and BMCETA259343E.

### Message Help Index

The ETA online help feature provides an index you can use to view information on all error messages that ETA can issue. You can use the message help index at any time; you do not have to wait until ETA issues an error message.

See “Using the Message Help Index” on page 34 for instructions on how to use the ETA message help index.

### Using the Message Help Index

ETA provides a message help index that allows you to view information on any ETA error message. The Messages help option from the Help pull-down menu allows you to use this index.

1. Display the ETA Messages – Entry panel.
   - Type the MSG command on the **Command** line and press **Enter**. The ETA Messages – Entry panel is displayed.
   - Or—
   - Perform the following steps:
     - Press **F13** to advance the cursor to the ETA action bar.
     - Move the cursor until it is positioned beside the Help selection.
c Press Enter. The Help pull-down menu (Figure 6 on page 35) is displayed.

**Figure 6: Help Pull-Down Menu**

![Help Pull-Down Menu](image)

d Type 3 in the selection field and press Enter. The ETA Messages – Entry panel is displayed.

2 (optional) You can bypass the message index (Step 3 on page 35 if you know your message number by typing the message number in the BMCETA Message number field and pressing Enter. Go to Step 5 on page 35.

3 Press Enter with the BMCETA Message number field blank to display the ETA Messages – List panel similar to the one in Figure 7 on page 35.

4 Scroll until the message you want is displayed, then type a slash (/) in the message selection field next to it, and press Enter again.

**Figure 7: Sample Message Help Index**

![Sample Message Help Index](image)

5 View information about a specific message.

Information about the message you specified is displayed in the Message Help panel.

6 When you have finished reviewing the information, press F3 twice to exit.
Interface Preferences

The Options pull-down menu on the action bar allows you to customize the ETA interface.

You can customize the interface at any time and from any panel in the ETA interface if you use the commands shown in the tasks. Otherwise, you must be on a panel that has an Options pull-down menu on the action bar.

Note
Pull-down menus are sensitive to cursor position. You can select options from a pull-down menu by typing the appropriate number in the selection field or by moving the cursor to the line that contains the option you want and pressing Enter.

Task Instructions for Specifying Preferences

See the following sections for instructions on how to specify or change preferences:

- “Specifying Preferences for Confirmations” on page 36
- “Specifying Preferences for Startup” on page 38
- “Specifying Preferences for the Colors and Field Attributes of the ETA Interface” on page 39
- “Specifying Preferences for the Function Keys” on page 40

Specifying Preferences for Confirmations

When you cancel or save data that you have entered or refresh the options being used in an IMS control region, ETA prompts you to confirm the action. Selections from the Options pull-down menu allow you to specify whether these confirmation panels should be displayed or suppressed.

1 Display the ETA User Preferences pop-up window.

   - Type the PREF command on the Command line and press Enter. The ETA User Preferences pop-up window is displayed.
     - Or-

   - Perform the following steps:
a  Press **F13** to advance the cursor to the ETA action bar.

b  Move the cursor until it is positioned beside the Options selection.

c  Press **Enter**. The Options pull-down menu is displayed.

d  Type the option number for the Preferences option in the selection field.

e  Press **Enter**. The ETA User Preferences pop-up window is displayed.

2  **Confirm SAVE on exit** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Save panel.

3  **Confirm CANCEL** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Cancel panel when you cancel changes without saving them.

4  **Confirm SAVE on Refresh** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Save panel when you attempt to refresh data in the IMS control region.

5  **Confirm Refresh IMSID/Group options** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Refresh panel when you attempt to refresh an IMSID or a Group.

6  **Confirm Refresh TSS** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Refresh panel when you attempt to refresh TSS data in the IMS control region.

7  **Confirm Refresh CPU-ID** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Refresh panel when you attempt to refresh a CPU-ID.

8  **Confirm Refresh Signon RC messages** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Refresh panel when you attempt to refresh a message for a signon return code.

9  **Confirm Refresh User messages** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the Confirm Refresh panel when you attempt to refresh a user message.

10  **Confirm Reload Device Descriptor table** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to execute a Reload request.

11  **Confirm Reset ALOT/ASOT/DLQ** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to execute a Reset request.
12 **Confirm Refresh Command Security Profile** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to execute a Refresh request.

13 **Confirm Refresh Command Security Table** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to execute a Refresh request.

14 **Confirm Delete ACEE** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to delete a command security user ID Accessor Environment Element (ACEE) in the IMS control region.

15 **Confirm Disconnect Userid** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to disconnect a command security user ID from an input source in the IMS control region.

16 **Confirm Deactivate exit** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to deactivate a User exit.

17 **Confirm Reactivate exit** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to reactivate a User exit.

18 **Confirm Load exit** – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress a confirmation panel when you attempt to load a User exit.

19 Press **F3** to save your changes.

### Specifying Preferences for Startup

Selections from the Options pull-down menu allow you to specify whether the product logo panel should be displayed or suppressed when you start ETA.

1  Display the ETA User Preferences pop-up window.

   - Type the **PREF** command on the **Command** line and press **Enter**. The ETA User Preferences pop-up window is displayed.
   - Or-

   - Perform the following steps:

     a  Press **F13** to advance the cursor to the ETA action bar.

     b  Move the cursor until it is positioned beside the Options option.

     c  Press **Enter**. The Options pull-down menu is displayed.
d Type the option number for the Preferences option in the selection field.

e Press Enter. The ETA User Preferences pop-up window is displayed.

2 Display Logo panel at Startup – Use this option to specify whether ETA should display or suppress the product logo panel.

3 Press F3 to save your changes.

Specifying Preferences for the Colors and Field Attributes of the ETA Interface

Selections from the Options pull-down menu allow you to specify the colors and field attributes used in the ETA online interface.

1 Display the CUA Attribute Change Utility pop-up window.

   ■ Type the ATTR command on the Command line and press Enter. The CUA Attribute Change Utility pop-up window is displayed.

   -Or-

   ■ Perform the following:

   a Press F13 to advance the cursor to the ETA action bar.

   b Move the cursor until it is positioned beside the Options option.

   c Press Enter. The Options pull-down menu is displayed.

   d Type the option number for the Colors option in the selection field.

   e Press Enter. The CUA Attribute Change Utility pop-up window is displayed.

2 Press Tab to advance to the entry fields each type of text that you want to change and type the name of the color, the intensity, and the highlighting you want to use.

3 Press F3 to save your changes.
Specifying Preferences for the Function Keys

Selections from the Options pull-down menu allow you to modify the functions for the ETA function keys.

1. Display the Keylist Utility pop-up window.

   - Type the **KEYLIST** command on the **Command** line and press **Enter**. The Keylist Utility for ETA pop-up window is displayed.
   - Or-

   - Perform the following:
     a. Press **F13** to advance the cursor to the ETA action bar.
     b. Move the cursor until it is positioned beside the Options option.
     c. Press **Enter**. The Options pull-down menu is displayed.
     d. Type the option number for the Function Keys option in the selection field.
     e. Press **Enter**. The Keylist Utility for ETA pop-up window is displayed.

2. The interface and functionality of the Keylist Utility will vary depending on the level of ISPF in your environment. Refer to the appropriate ISPF documentation for more information about the Keylist Utility.
IMS system information that ETA requires

You must provide ETA with information about the IMS system, how the system is set up, and what features you want to use, before you can use the program to customize an IMS system.

You may have provided this information during ETA installation. However, you might need to modify this information to reflect changes in your IMS and VTAM systems, or you might need to specify this information for a new IMS system running on a licensed CPU.

This information is stored by IMSID. When you have specified and saved this information, you can use ETA to customize all aspects of the IMS system.

Preparing to use ETA

ETA no longer requires use of the IBM IMS Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature. For more information, see the System Administration for IMS Products Customization Guide.

Task Instructions for System Information

See the following sections for instructions on specifying system information:

- “Specifying IMSID/Group and Library Information” on page 42
- “Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options” on page 44
- “Specifying Group Options” on page 47
- “Specifying Information for the TSS Feature” on page 49
Specifying IMSID/Group and Library Information

Before you can use ETA to customize an IMS system or a Group of IMS systems, you must specify information about the IMS system (or Group of IMS systems) and storage of the IMSID (or Group) options modules.

The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel allows you to specify this information.

Figure 8: Panel Flow for Specifying IMSID or Group and Library Information

Before you begin

If you are preparing to use ETA to customize a new IMS system or a new Group of IMS systems, you must have installed ETA and invoked the ETA online interface.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Once you have saved the IMSID or Group options module, the changes will only take place during the next IMS restart. If you perform an IMSID options REFRESH, the only changes that will take place are the display/zap options and the IMS command options.

You can verify or change the following options through this task:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To specify or change the option for...</th>
<th>Perform Step 1 and...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMSID or Group name</td>
<td>Step 2 on page 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options library name</td>
<td>Step 3 on page 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional libraries in which to save Options</td>
<td>Step 4 on page 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To Specify IMSID/Group and Library Information

1. Go to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the Group or IMSID name.
To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**.

3 Verify or change the names of the options library where ETA IMSID or Group options modules will be stored.

   a **Options library** – Verify or change the name of the library where the IMSID and Group option modules are stored for use by the ETA ISPF interface. The ETA ISPF interface and the IMS control region both require access to IMSID and Group options modules. When you specify options for a new IMS system or Group of IMS systems, the **Options library** field displays the name of the options library for the last IMS system or Group you modified.

   b Press **Enter**. ETA accepts the data.

4 **Save library 1** – Type the data set name of the additional library in which to store the IMSID or Group options modules in the **Save library 1** field, if your installation stores ETA IMSID and Group option modules in separate libraries used by ISPF, the control region, or BMCXLINK. If ISPF, IMS, or BMCXLINK use the same library, this field is optional. You can use the **Save library 2** field for the same purpose.

   **Note**
   If you use several load libraries, remember that it is possible to have a copy of a module in more than one library. IMS will use the first module it finds, regardless of whether that module is the most current one available.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs or Groups as required.

**Where to go from here**

You can perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the IMS system or Group...</th>
<th>Then you can...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has previously been customized with ETA</td>
<td>Change other information about the IMS system or Group, or perform IMS system customizations as needed. Press <strong>F3</strong> to return to the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is being customized for the first time with ETA</td>
<td>See “Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options” on page 44 or “Specifying Group Options” on page 47 for instructions on specifying additional information that ETA needs to function on the IMS system or Group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options

Before ETA can customize an IMS system, you must specify the information on options module storage and ETA features you want to use. Use the IMSID Options - Basic Options panel to specify this information.

**WARNING**
ETA no longer uses BMCLINK. BMCXLINK does *not* require that an application and transaction be defined. Since BMCXLINK requires a different VTAM LOGMODE, it is recommended that new VTAM definitions be created for BMCXLINK to prevent interference with, and for fallback to, the existing BMCLINK environment. Review ETASAMP member ETA$APPL for required VTAM definitions, and ETACNTL members ETA#LINK for the BMCXLINK JCL, and ETA#MODE for the VTAM MODETABLE creation.

If you are currently using the DELTA PLUS product, you can use the existing DELTA PLUS BMCXLINK task to ETA, if you concatenate the ETA load library in the existing BMCXLINK task.

The ISPF interface will automatically display the IMSID Options - Basic Options panel if ETA detects an IMSID options module that needs to be upgraded. The **BMCXLINK LUNAME** field will be blank. Specify the BMCXLINK LU name to be used.

**Figure 9: Panel Flow for Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options**

---

**Before you begin**

If you are preparing to use ETA to customize a new IMS system, you must have completed “Specifying IMSID/Group and Library Information” on page 42.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.
To Specify Basic IMSID Information and Options

1 Go to the IMSID Options – Basic Options panel.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Basic Options panel is displayed.

2 Allow IMS storage displays – To use ETA’s IMS Storage Display panel to display storage in the IMS control region, use the Allow IMS storage displays field to activate this feature; otherwise, leave this field blank. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature or a blank to deactivate this feature.

3 Allow IMS storage zaps – If you want to use ETA’s IMS Storage Display panel to modify storage in the IMS control region, use the Allow IMS storage zaps field to activate this feature; otherwise, leave this field blank. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature or a blank to deactivate this feature.

4 Copy IMSID Options to an IMS STEPLIB library when saved – If you store IMSID options modules in separate libraries for TSO and IMS and you want ETA to copy new or updated modules to an IMS STEPLIB library automatically, use the Copy IMSID Options to an IMS STEPLIB library when saved field to activate this option. If you store ETA load modules for TSO and IMS in separate libraries, BMC Software recommends that you activate this option to ensure that both libraries have the most current IMSID options modules. Otherwise, leave this field blank. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature.

   Note

   If you use several load libraries, it is possible to have a copy of a module in more than one library. IMS will use the first module it finds, regardless of whether that module is the most current one available. When you modify or install new IMSID options modules, BMC Software recommends that you store them in one of the following ways:

   ■ Store the new modules in the library that contains the existing modules.
   ■ Remove older copies of ETA modules if you must store the new modules in a library other than the library that contains the existing modules.

5 IMS STEPLIB library – If you store IMSID options modules in separate libraries for TSO and IMS, type the name of an IMS STEPLIB library in the IMS STEPLIB library field.
6 **XRF Alternate IMSID**–Specify the IMSID of the IMSGEN-defined XRF alternate system. If you do not use XRF, leave this field blank.

If you use XRF, ETA automatically creates two IMSID options modules when you save your IMSID options: the primary IMSID options module and the alternate IMSID options module. ETA creates these modules automatically to ensure that the modules are always synchronized.

**WARNING**

Never manually edit the IMSID options module for your alternate IMS system. The options for the primary IMSID options module and the alternate IMSID options module must not conflict to avoid potential errors.

7 **XCF Group**–Specify the name of the cross-system coupling facility (XCF) Group to which this IMS system belongs. Because an IMS system does not have to belong to a Group, this field is optional.

**Note**

If a Group name is supplied, the **BMCXLINK LUNAME** field on this panel is overridden by the selected Group Options. Group options enable a user-defined group of IMS systems to be treated as one IMS system. A Group of IMS systems would typically be an IMS Datasharing Group, IMS Shared Queues Group, or a group of logically related or duplicated IMS systems. Group options are not required.

8 **BMCXLINK LUNAME**–Specify a network LUNAME for the BMCXLINK VTAM subtask. The LUNAME specified MUST match the LUNAME specified in the PARM field of the BMCXLINK task.

The default value for this field is BMCXLINK.

BMCXLINK communicates with IMS using XCF routines.

9 Press F3 twice to return to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

10 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

You can perform any of the following actions:
If the IMS system...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Has previously been customized with ETA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Then you can...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform system customizations for other IMSIDs as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region so that your changes take effect. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying Group Options

The ETA Group options enable a user-defined group of IMS systems to be treated as one IMS system.

**Note**
The only restriction is the IMS systems must all reside in the same XCF complex.

Enabling IMS systems to join a group allows you to perform many functions simultaneously for all systems in the group. When you create or change Group options, the load module ETAZ_gggg is link-edited to your ETA options library.

**Note**
Group options are NOT required.

**Figure 10: Panel Flow for Specifying Group Options**

[Diagram showing panel flow for specifying group options]
**Before you begin**

If you are preparing to use ETA to customize a new Group, you must have completed “Specifying IMSID/Group and Library Information” on page 42.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Specify Group Options**

1. Go to the IMSID Options – Basic Options panel.

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 2 in the **Selection** field with the Group name specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit Group Options panel is displayed.

2. **BMCXLINK LUNAME** – Specify a network LUNAME for the BMCXLINK VTAM subtask. The LUNAME specified MUST match the LUNAME specified in the PARM field of the BMCXLINK task. The default value for this field is BMCALINK. BMCXLINK communicates with IMS using cross-system coupling facility (XCF) routines.

3. **Copy Group options to an IMS STEPLIB library when saved** – If you store Group options modules in separate libraries for TSO and IMS and you want ETA to copy new or updated modules to an IMS STEPLIB library automatically, use the **Copy Group Options to an IMS STEPLIB library when saved** field to activate this option. If you store ETA load modules for TSO and IMS in separate libraries, BMC Software recommends that you activate this option to ensure that both libraries have the most current Group options modules. Otherwise, leave this field blank. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature.

   **Note**

   If you use several load libraries, it is possible to have a copy of a module in more than one library. IMS will use the first module it finds, regardless of whether that module is the most current one available. When you modify or install new Group options modules, BMC Software recommends that you store them in one of the following ways:

   - Store the new modules in the library that contains the existing modules.

   - Remove older copies of ETA modules if you must store the new modules in a library other than the library that contains the existing modules.
4 **IMS STEPLIB library** – If you store Group options modules in separate libraries for TSO and IMS, type the name of an IMS STEPLIB library in the **IMS STEPLIB library** field.

5 Press F3 twice to return to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

6 Repeat this task for other Groups as required.

**Where to go from here**

You can perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the Group...</th>
<th>Then you can...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has previously been customized with ETA</td>
<td>Perform other Group customizations as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Refresh the Group options in the IMS control region so that your changes take effect. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying Information for the TSS Feature**

Before you can use the ETA Translate Sub-System (TSS) feature to customize an IMS system, you must specify the TSS data set name. If you want to use cache buffering to provide faster access to TSS table data than direct access to TSS data sets, you must also specify the number of cache buffers that ETA should allocate and use. Use the IMSID Options - Translate Sub-System (TSS) Options panel to specify this information.

**Figure 11: Panel Flow for Specifying Information for the TSS Feature**

![Panel Flow for Specifying Information for the TSS Feature](image)
**Before you begin**

If you are preparing to use ETA to customize a new IMS system, you must have completed the previous tasks in this chapter.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To specify or modify the TSS data set name, you must have already allocated the TSS data set. See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions.

ETA allows you to create a TSS table that specifies MSC information for remote LTERMs (RCNTs). See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on creating TSS data sets and tables.

---

**Note**

If an LTERM destination is created as a remote CNT via the remote LTERMs (RCNTs) TSS table, it cannot be used as a local LTERM until the next cold start of IMS. Conversely, if an LTERM is created as a local LTERM, if cannot be used as a remote LTERM until the next cold start of IMS.

---

**To Specify Information for the TSS Feature**

1. Go to the IMSID Options—Translate Sub-System (TSS) Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 2 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options—Translate Sub-System (TSS) Options panel is displayed.

2. **TSS table data set name**—Type the name of the TSS data set in the **TSS table data set name** field.

3. **Number of cache buffers**—Specify the number of TSS cache buffers that ETA will allocate for TSS use in the **Number of cache buffers** field.

   You must specify at least five buffers. When you have created the TSS tables you require, you can change the number of TSS cache buffers as needed. See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and
instructions on calculating the optimal number of TSS cache buffers for an IMS system.

4 **RCNT TSS table name**–Specify the name of a TSS table that contains MSNAME information for the creation of dynamic remote LTERMs.

5 Assume ALLROWS keyword on /DIS TSSTABLE command–To prevent the ETA /DISPLAY TSSTABLE tablename command from displaying a list of all rows in the specified TSS table automatically, type a slash (/) in this field to activate this feature; otherwise, leave this field blank.

6 Press F3 twice to return to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

7 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

8 Restart each IMS system on which you changed the TSS data set name or number of cache buffers.

**Where to go from here**

You can perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the IMS system...</th>
<th>Then you can...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has previously been customized with ETA</td>
<td>Change other information about the IMS system or perform IMS system customizations as needed. Exit the ETA online interface, and restart the IMS system to implement your changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is being customized for the first time with ETA</td>
<td>Exit the ETA online interface, and restart the IMS system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMS Customization by IMSID

This chapter provides information on how to customize IMS systems by using the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ET) online interface.

Customization options you specify through ETA are stored by IMSID. Task instructions are designed for use at a terminal using the ETA online interface; see the ETA online help, the IBM documentation for IMS, or the IBM documentation for Extended Terminal Option (ETO) for reference information on options you can specify through ETA.

Printer and Unsolicited Output Options

You can use the ETA Unsolicited Output feature to perform the following tasks:

- Control the creation of LTERMs for unknown destinations
- Automatically create printer control blocks using options that you specify when dynamic printer LTERMs are created

Application programs can send non-conversational messages to dynamic LTERMs before the creation of dynamic terminals or printers. After completion of logon, signon, Autosignon, or IMS Autologon processing, the output assigned to these dynamic LTERMs can be viewed or printed.

When IMS attempts to locate an LTERM that has not been defined in an IMSGEN or has not been created, the options and values that you specify for the ETA Unsolicited Output feature determine the action that IMS will perform.

ETA Defaults

Specify system-wide options that control the creation of unknown destinations and assist in the creation of dynamic printers.
Unknown destinations are LTERMs that do not exist at a given point in time because they were not defined in an IMSGEN.

Use the Unsolicited Output Options - ETA Defaults panel to select whether ETA should use the ETA Defaults, the UNSOLOUT and TRANSACT TSS tables, or call an ETA user exit to determine the output options.

Also use this panel to specify the following ETA Defaults for the creation of unknown destinations:

- IMS MSGDEL option for USERs
- IMS response mode for USERs
- IMS UC/ULC option for LTERMs

### TSS Options

Specify TSS-driven options that control the creation of unknown destinations and assist in the creation of dynamic printers.

Unknown destinations are LTERMs that do not exist at a given point in time because they were not defined in an IMSGEN.

Use the Unsolicited Output Options – TSS Options panel to specify a TSS table name for the Unsolicited Output TSS option and the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search.

**Note**

TRANSACT TSS table processing is performed only for IMS systems that are running with Common Queue Server (CQS).

ETA allows you to use a TSS table to control the creation of unknown destinations and simplify the process of creating dynamic printers. One TSS table can specify data for both functions.

#### To control the creation of unknown destinations

1. Create a table that uses the names of LTERMs as arguments for the TSS table.

   You can use either the names of LTERMs that you will allow to be created or the names of LTERMs that you will NOT allow. The table processing options you specify on the ETA Unsolicited Output Options – TSS Options panel will then determine, from the results of the TSS table search, whether LTERMs will be created.
To simplify the process of creating dynamic printers

1 Use printer LTERM names as arguments for the TSS table and specify any applicable parameters.

When a printer LTERM is created, ETA will automatically issue the OPNDST command for that printer if the LTERM name exists in the TSS table.

Values specified through TSS override all options that were specified by using ETA Defaults. Options you specify through ETA Defaults serve as defaults if the TSS translate fails and for options that are not specified in the TSS table.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on creating and maintaining TSS tables. See “Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-TSS Options” on page 58 for instructions on using the TSS option to specify unsolicited output options.

Task Instructions for Unsolicited Output Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting unsolicited output options:

- “Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-ETA Defaults” on page 55
- “Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-TSS Options” on page 58

Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-ETA Defaults

The ETA Unsolicited Output feature allows you to control the creation of unknown destinations and simplify the process of creating dynamic printers.
The Unsolicited Output Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to specify system-wide options for the creation of unknown destinations.

**Figure 12: Panel Flow**

![Figure 12: Panel Flow](image)

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

---

**Note**

If you intend to use unsolicited output/printer options, you must provide IMS with information similar to the signon information. For example, if signon processing creates a different LTERM, the UNSOLOUT process must do the same. This ensures the correct user name is built when the user structure and queue are built. Additionally, if you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

---

**To Specify Unsolicited Output Options--ETA Defaults**

1. Go to the Unsolicited Output Options - ETA Defaults panel.

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options – Unsolicited Output/Printer Options panel is displayed.
d. From the IMSID Options – Unsolicited Output/Printer Options panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Unsolicited Output Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. In the **Method** selection field, indicate how you want ETA to specify unsolicited output options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify options through...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the UNSOLOUT and TRANSACT TSS tables</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Unknown destination option** – Activate this option if you never want unknown destinations to be created by a user or an application. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

4. **Message delete option** – Type the option number of the type of messages that should not be displayed or printed.

5. **IMS response mode option** – Type the option number to specify a system-wide value for the IMS response mode option that determines whether USERs will be placed in response mode.

6. **LTERM Output option** – Activate this option if you want output from LTERMs to be displayed and printed in uppercase characters. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

7. Press **F3** three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

8. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify Unsolicited Output options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>see “Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-TSS Options” on page 58 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies unsolicited output options (TRANSACT or UNSOLOUT table) and/or information for the creation of LTERMs and dynamic printers</td>
<td>see “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to...</td>
<td>Then...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Unsolicited Output exit</td>
<td>see “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Unsolicited Output exit available to an IMS control region</td>
<td>see “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Unsolicited Output exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying Unsolicited Output Options-TSS Options**

The Unsolicited Output Options – TSS Options panel allows you to specify a TSS table name for the Unsolicited Output TSS option and the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search.

*Figure 13: Specifying Unsolicited Output Options—TSS Options*

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.
To Specify Unsolicited Output Options–TSS Options

1 Go to the Unsolicited Output Options – TSS Options panel.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Unsolicited Output/Printer Options panel is displayed.
   d From the IMSID Options – Unsolicited Output/Printer Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Unsolicited Output Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2 Unsolicited output TRANSACT TSS table name–To activate the Unsolicited Output TRANSACT TSS option, specify the name of the TSS table you want to use.

   To deactivate the Unsolicited Output TRANSACT TSS option, replace the table name with all blanks and press Enter.

   Note
   TRANSACT TSS table processing is performed only for IMS systems that are running with Common Queue Server (CQS).

3 TRANSACT TSS table processing (successful) option– Specify the type of processing that should occur when a search of an Unsolicited Output TRANSACT TSS table is successful.
If you want to... | and the TSS table contains... | Then type...
--- | --- | ---
Allow transaction creation using the TSS table data | the names of transactions that you will allow to be created on an IMS system | 1 in the selection field.

Never allow transaction creation | the names of transactions that you do NOT want created on an IMS system | 2 in the selection field.

---

Note
TRANSACT TSS table processing is performed only for IMS systems that are running with Common Queue Server (CQS).

4 Unsolicited output TSS table name—To activate the Unsolicited Output TSS option, specify the name of the TSS table you want to use. To deactivate the Unsolicited Output TRANSACT TSS option, replace the table name with all blanks and press Enter.

5 TSS table processing (successful) option—Specify the type of processing that should occur when a search of an Unsolicited Output TSS table is successful.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>and the TSS table contains...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow LTERM creation using the TSS table data</td>
<td>the names of LTERMs that you will allow to be created on an IMS system</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Never allow LTERM creation | the names of LTERMs that you do NOT want created on an IMS system | 2 in the selection field.

6 TSS table processing (unsuccessful) option—Specify the type of processing that should occur when a search of an Unsolicited Output TSS table is unsuccessful.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow LTERM creation using the ETA defaults specified on the Unsolicited Output Options – ETA Defaults panel EXCEPT for the Never create unknown destinations field, which is ignored</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Never allow LTERM creation | 2 in the selection field.

7 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

8 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.
Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies unsolicited output options (TRANSACT or UNSOLOUT table) and/or information for the creation of LTERM{s} and dynamic printers</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA unsolicited output exit</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA unsolicited output exit available to an IMS control region</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA unsolicited output exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Logon Options

The ETA online interface allows you to specify all options available for logon through the ETA Defaults, by terminal type, or by activating the TSS feature for specifying logon options.

ETA Default

Specify system-wide logon options that:

- provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/FINANCE devices
- fail logon when the number of active dynamic terminals exceeds a specified limit
- allow ETA logon to process static devices
- provide VTAM USERDATA for the following information:
  - user ID
— password
— the VTAM-defined node name to IMS when session managers are used
— format to replace the DFS3649A or DFS3650I format
— initial transaction schedule

■ specify whether ETA should use the ETA Defaults, the LOGONNOD or a
LOGONTYP TSS table, or call an ETA user exit to determine the logon options

Terminal Type Options

You can specify the following logon options by terminal type:

■ Logon descriptor selection algorithm
■ Name of the ETA default descriptor (if used)
■ Autologoff interval
■ Autosignoff interval
■ Logoff at autosignoff
■ Screen size or model

TSS Options

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to perform the same logon functions as
the ETA Defaults, except that you can specify these features to be performed on an
individual terminal, terminal type, or mode table.

The values specified through TSS override all options specified by using ETA
Defaults and terminal type. However, options specified through ETA Defaults and
terminal type are used as defaults for options not specified in the TSS table.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information
on TSS tables.
Task Instructions for Logon Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting logon options:

- “Specifying Logon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 63
- “Specifying Logon Options—Terminal Type” on page 70
- “Specifying Logoff Options—TSS Options” on page 83

Specifying Logon Options—ETA Defaults

The Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to specify system-wide logon options.

Figure 14: Panel Flow for Specifying Logon Options – ETA Defaults

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To specify a replacement for the DFS3649A or DFS3650I panel through VTAM USERDATA, you must configure your session manager to provide this information. To use a keyword to identify the replacement information, you must use commas or spaces as delimiters between keywords.

Note

If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.
To Specify Logon Option—ETA Defaults

1 Go to the Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 4 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Logon Options panel is displayed.
   d From the IMSID Options – Logon Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2 Provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/FINANCE devices – Activate this option if you want ETA to provide the information these devices require for logon. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature or a blank to deactivate this feature.

ETA will extract the logon data from one of the following sources, depending on the type of information available:

- the VTAM USERDATA
- a LOGONNOD TSS table, which allows you to specify user IDs other than those that appear in the VTAM USERDATA

If you use a Logon TSS table, the source of the user ID depends on the following:

- if the TSS table contains user ID information, it will be used
- if the TSS table does not contain user ID information, ETA will extract this information from the VTAM USERDATA

3 Fail logon if maximum dynamic terminals exceeded – Activate this option if you want ETA to limit the number of dynamic terminals that can be logged on to IMS at the same time. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature or a blank to deactivate this feature.

ETA displays the Max count field so that you can specify the maximum number of dynamic terminals that will be allowed to be logged on to the specified IMS system concurrently.

Dynamic STSN devices that have been logged on and then logged off (unless their control blocks have been deleted through ETA) will count towards the specified maximum dynamic terminal limit.
4 **Max count field** – Specify the maximum number of dynamic terminals that can be logged on to the specified IMS system at the same time.

5 **Allow ETA logon to process static devices** – Activate this option if you want ETA to allow logon processing to affect statically-defined devices. Be careful to ensure that static devices continue to log on as desired, based upon the ETA logon options selected. Type a slash (/) to activate this feature or a blank to deactivate this feature.

6 **Propagate userid to IMS** – If a session manager or users provide user ID information in the VTAM USERDATA, ETA can extract this information at logon and pass it to IMS for signon or Autosignon processing. Leave the **Propagate userid to IMS** field blank if you do not want to use this feature.

   a Type one of the following in the **Propagate userid to IMS** field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the feature</td>
<td>S and press Enter. Go to Step 6.b on page 65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the feature</td>
<td>A blank. Go to Step 6.c on page 65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View previously specified data</td>
<td>V and press Enter. Go to Step 6.c on page 65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update previously specified data</td>
<td>U and press Enter. Go to Step 6.b on page 65.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b On the Userid Processing pop-up window, specify the search method that you want ETA to use for extracting the user ID from the VTAM USERDATA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search by position</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and the position in the Position for userid field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for a specific keyword that precedes the user ID</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and the keyword in the Keyword field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   c Press Enter.

7 **Propagate password to IMS** – If you have activated the ETA feature that propagates user ID information to IMS and if a session manager or users provide password information in the VTAM USERDATA, ETA can extract this information at logon and pass it to IMS for signon or Autosignon processing. Leave the **Propagate password to IMS** field blank if you do not want to use this feature.

   *Note*

To use this option, you must activate the **Propagate userid to IMS** option.
a Type one of the following in the **Propagate password to IMS** field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the feature</td>
<td>S and press Enter. Go to Step 7.b on page 66.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the feature</td>
<td>A blank. Go to Step 7.c on page 66.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View previously specified data</td>
<td>V and press Enter. Go to Step 7.c on page 66.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update previously specified data</td>
<td>U and press Enter. Go to Step 7.b on page 66.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b On the Password Processing pop-up window, indicate the search method that you want ETA to use for extracting the password from the VTAM USERDATA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search by position</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the position in the <strong>Position for password</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for a specific keyword that precedes the password</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and type the keyword in the <strong>Keyword</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Press Enter.

d **Session manager true nodename support** – Activate this option if your installation uses a session manager and you want IMS to use the VTAM-defined node name for logon processing instead of the session manager pool node name.

**Note**
If you activate this option and use a LOGONNOD or LOGONTYP TSS table to specify logon options, ETA will use the VTAM-defined node name as the TSS search argument (NOT the session manager pool node name).

**Note**
The PARSESS=YES parameter must be specified in the VTAM APPL statement for each IMSID on which you want to use this feature.

a Type one of the following in the **Session manager true nodename support** field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the feature</td>
<td>S and press Enter. Go to Step 8.b on page 67.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the feature</td>
<td>A blank. Step 8.e on page 68.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View previously specified data</td>
<td>V and press Enter. Go to Step 8.e on page 68.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then type...  
---|---
Update previously specified data | U and press Enter. Go to Step 8.b on page 67.

When you activate the option, view, or update data, the VTAM Node Name Processing pop-up window (Figure 15 on page 67) is displayed.

**Figure 15: VTAM Node Name Processing Pop-Up Window**

- **b** Specify the type of search ETA that should perform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to search for...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All nodes</td>
<td>1 in the selection field. Do not specify node prefixes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodes with specific prefixes</td>
<td>2 in the selection field. Then type the node name prefixes ETA should search for in the node name prefix fields shown in Figure 15 on page 67.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **c** Specify the search method that ETA should use. Under the heading **Search method**, perform one of the following actions:

| If you want to... | Then type...  
---|---
| Search by position | 1 in the selection field and type the position in the **Position for nodename** field. |
| Search for a specific keyword that precedes the node name | 2 in the selection field and type the keyword in the **Keyword** field. |
d Verify or change the action that ETA should perform with the node name information. Under the heading Use of VTAM node name, perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If ETA should...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the information to log on terminals (default)</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide the information to the IMS logs and any available exits but use the session manager node name to log on terminals</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e Press Enter.

9 Initial format name support—Activate this option if you want IMS to replace the DFS3649A or DFS3650I format with a format that is specified (by a session manager or user) in the VTAM USERDATA. The format that this option replaces and the way that it functions depends on whether your facility requires signon or uses ETA Autosignon.

a Type one of the following in the Initial format name support field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the feature</td>
<td>S and press Enter. Go to Step 9.b on page 68.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the feature</td>
<td>a blank. Go to Step 9.d on page 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update previously specified data</td>
<td>U and press Enter. Go to Step 9.b on page 68.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b On the Initial Format Processing pop-up window, select the search method to be used to locate the initial format name and to specify how the initial format will be propagated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search by position</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the position in the Position for format name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for a specific keyword that precedes the password</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and type the keyword in the Keyword field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Initial format propagation option—Specify whether ETA should replace the IMS DFS3649A or DFS3650I format only the first time or every time that the format would normally be displayed.
If you want to… | Then type…
---|---
Display the initial format the first time only | 1 in the selection field.
Display the initial format as the DFS3649A or DFS3650I replacement for the duration of the user session | 2 in the selection field.

**d** Press Enter.

**10 Initial transaction scheduling support**—Activate this option if you want ETA to replace the DFS3650I message with transaction information that is specified in the VTAM USERDATA. This option can be used for ETA autosignon or for IMS autologon.

**a** Type an action in the **Initial transaction scheduling support** field.

| If you want to… | Then type…
---|---
Activate the feature | S and press Enter. Go to Step 10.b on page 69.
Deactivate the feature | A blank. Go to Step 10.c on page 69.
View previously specified data | V and press Enter. Go to Step 10.c on page 69.
Update previously specified data | U and press Enter. Go to Step 10.b on page 69.

**b** On the Initial Transaction Scheduling pop-up window, select the search method to be used to locate the initial transaction scheduling.

| If you want to… | Then type…
---|---
search by position | 1 in the selection field and type a valid value in the Position for transaction information field.
search by keyword | 2 in the selection field and type a valid value in the Keyword field.

**c** Press Enter.

**11** In the **Method** selection field, indicate how you want ETA to specify unsolicited output options.

| If you want to specify options through… | Then type…
---|---
ETA Defaults | 1 in the selection field.
a LOGONNOD or a LOGONTYP TSS table | 2 in the selection field.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify options through...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

13 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify logon options by terminal type</td>
<td>See “Specifying Logon Options—Terminal Type” on page 70 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify logon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Logon Options—TSS Options” on page 74 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA logon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA logon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or an ETA Logon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifying Logon Options—Terminal Type

The Logon Options – Terminal Type panel allows you to specify logon options for each terminal type used on an IMS system. Values you specify on this panel may be used as defaults when TSS table searches fail.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Note

If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

To Specify Logon Options—Terminal Type

1  Go to the Logon Options – Terminal Type panel.
   a  From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b  From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 4 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Logon Options panel is displayed.
   d  From the IMSID Options – Logon Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Logon Options – Terminal Type panel is displayed.

2  Specify logon options for each terminal type used at your facility.
   a  Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to a terminal type to access a Logon Options – Terminal Type pop-up window and edit the logon options for the selected type of terminals.
b **Descriptor selection order**—Perform one of the following actions for this type of terminal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the standard IMS descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>leave the descriptor selection order fields blank. Go to Step 2.c on page 72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create your own descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>Type 1, 2, 3, 4, or a blank in the fields under the heading <strong>Descriptor selection order</strong>. A blank causes ETA to ignore the descriptor selection option. If you include the ETA default descriptor in the search algorithm, you must type the descriptor name in the ETA default descriptor name field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c **Autologoff**—If you want to specify an ALOT interval for this type of terminal, perform one of the following actions under the heading **Autologoff**. Otherwise, leave this field blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want IMS to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the ALOT value you specify in the minutes field</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never automatically log off inactive terminals or printers</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically log off immediately after signoff completes</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
The ALOT and ASOT intervals you specify with the ETA logon options override IMS default values and the ALOT and ASOT intervals you specify on the Timeout Options – Terminal Type panel. See “Timeout Options” on page 141 for additional information.

d **Autosignoff**—If you want to specify an ASOT interval for this type of terminal, perform one of the following actions under the heading **Autosignoff**. Otherwise, leave this field blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want IMS to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the ASOT value you specify in the minutes field</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never automatically sign off inactive terminals or printers</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically sign off immediately after last message is delivered</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
e Logoff at Autosignoff—Specify whether IMS should automatically log off terminals and printers when these devices are automatically signed off after the ASOT interval expires. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

Note
If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

f Screen size—Specify the option number of a screen size or a model number that will be used for all terminals of the type you selected.

Review your Message Format Services (MFS) requirements before selecting this option. The screen size or model number you select will be used for all terminals regardless of MFS, unless it is overridden by your specifications on the Logon TSS Options panel.

If you specify a screen size, it will override the screen size or screen model defined in VTAM.

g Press F3.

h Repeat Step 2 on page 71 for each type of terminal used at your facility.

3 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify logon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Logon Options—TSS Options” on page 74 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA logon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA logon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Implement your customizations | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.
If you have specified that a TSS table or an ETA Logon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

**Specifying Logon Options—TSS Options**

The Logon Options – TSS Options panel allows you to activate the Logon TSS option and specify the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search.

**Figure 17: Panel Flow – Specifying Logon Options—TSS Options**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Specify Logon Options—TSS Options**

1. Go to the Logon Options – TSS Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 4 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Logon Options panel is displayed.

d From the IMSID Options – Logon Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Logon Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2 Use the fields under the heading TSS table search order to activate the Logon TSS option and specify the type or types of TSS tables and search arguments you want to use. Leave the fields blank to deactivate the Logon TSS option and ETA performs no TSS table search.

a Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to search...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only a LOGONNOD TSS table by node name</td>
<td>Type 1 in the Logon node name TSS table field and the table name in the associated name field. Record the table name for later use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only a LOGONTYP TSS table by terminal type</td>
<td>Type 1 in the Logon terminal type TSS table field and the table name in the associated name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only a LOGONTYP TSS table by MODETBL name</td>
<td>Type 1 in the Logon MODETBL TSS table field and the table name in the associated name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables (or one LOGONTYP TSS table by two argument types)</td>
<td>Specify the order in which the tables should be searched and the TSS table name for each type of table. You can only search two of the three available TSS tables. You can specify the same TSS table name in the Logon terminal type TSS table and Logon MODETBL TSS table fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b If you have not yet created one or more of the TSS tables, record the TSS table name(s) for later use in creating the table(s).

Note

The action ETA takes after the search depends on options you select in the Table 1 processing options and the Table 2 processing options fields.

3 Use the fields under the heading Table 1 processing options to specify the type of processing that should occur when searches of the first or only TSS table succeed and when searches fail.

a Specify the type of processing that should occur when a match is found during a search of the first TSS table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Use the data</td>
<td>1 in the first selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Task Instructions for Logon Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables</td>
<td>Use the data and ignore the second table</td>
<td>1 in the <em>first</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Save the data and search the second TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the <em>first</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b** Specify the type of processing that should occur when a TSS search of the first table fails.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Allow logon processing using the ETA defaults you have specified</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the logon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables</td>
<td>Search the second TSS table</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the logon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**c** Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables</td>
<td>Go to Step 4 on page 76.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Use the fields under the heading **Table 2 processing options** to specify the type of processing that TSS should perform when searches of the *second* TSS table succeed and when searches fail.

**a** Specify the type of processing that should occur when a match is found in the second TSS table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only the second search succeeds</td>
<td>Use the data</td>
<td>1 in the <em>first</em> selection field and 2 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both searches succeed</td>
<td>Use the data from the <em>first</em> table only</td>
<td>1 in the <em>first</em> selection field and 1 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the data from the <em>second</em> table only</td>
<td>1 in the <em>first</em> selection field and 2 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Merge data from both tables</td>
<td>2 in the <em>first</em> selection field and use the table fields to specify which table supersedes the other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b Specify the type of processing that should occur when a TSS search of the second table fails.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The first search succeeded</td>
<td>Use the data from the first table</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the logon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both searches failed</td>
<td>Allow logon processing using the ETA defaults you have specified</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the logon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Press **Enter**.

5 Press **F3** three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify logon options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions on creating the tables. Use the table names you recorded in Step 3.b on page 76.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify default options that will be used if a TSS table search fails</td>
<td>See “Specifying Logon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 63 and “Specifying Logon Options—Terminal Type” on page 70 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or an ETA Logon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Logoff Options**

The ETA Logoff feature allows you to clear terminal control settings that were set during the current terminal session.
These settings can be cleared only when the terminal and the user control blocks are still connected. In a dynamic terminal environment, this type of connectivity applies to SLUP, FIN, and ISC device types only. All other dynamic terminal types are uncoupled from their user structure during IMS signoff. Static terminal control block structures are never uncoupled.

---

**Note**

To clear terminal control settings for a dynamic terminal type other than SLUP, FIN, or ISC, use the ETA Signoff options. See “Signoff Options” on page 113 for more information.

---

**ETA Defaults**

Specify system-wide logoff options that allow you to activate or deactivate the following options at logoff:

- Exit all conversations
- Clear the Exclusive mode
- Clear the Test mode
- Clear the Preset mode
- Clear the MFSTEST mode
- Clear the Response mode
- Clear the Fast Path Response mode
- Enable automatic /DEQ of queued messages for static SLU2 and 3270 device types

---

**Note**

Logoff processing can clear the Test, Preset, and Response mode settings from a previous session if the **Remove TEST mode**, **Remove PRESET mode**, and **Remove RESPONSE mode** fields are selected, but the statuses of these fields are not retained by IMS.

In a shared queues local environment, Logoff processing can clear the response mode setting if the **Remove RESPONSE mode** field is selected.
TSS Options

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to perform the same logoff functions as the ETA Defaults, except that you can specify these features to be performed on an individual terminal, terminal type, or mode table.

Options specified through TSS override all options specified by using ETA Defaults. However, the options specified by using ETA Defaults will be used under the following conditions:

- For any options that are not specified in the TSS table
- If a TSS table search fails and you selected the TSS table processing option that causes ETA to continue logoff processing by using ETA defaults

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on TSS tables.

Task Instructions for Logoff Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting logoff options:

- “Specifying Logoff Options—ETA Defaults” on page 79
- “Specifying Logoff Options—TSS Options” on page 83

Specifying Logoff Options—ETA Defaults

The Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to specify system-wide logoff options for dynamic STSN (SLUP, FIN, or ISC) and static terminals.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify Logoff Options—ETA Defaults

1. Go to the Logoff Options – ETA Defaults panel.

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Logoff Options panel is displayed.

   d. From the IMSID Options – Logoff Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Logoff Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. Complete the Logoff Selection Options section.

   a. Use the field under the heading Dynamic STSN devices to specify the options you want to use for dynamic terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to use... | Then type...
---|---
A customer-modified Logoff exit | 3 in the option selection field.

b Use the field under the heading **Static terminals** to specify the options you want to use for static terminals.

| If you want to use... | Then type...
---|---
ETA Defaults | 1 in the option selection field.
A TSS table | 2 in the option selection field.
A customer-modified logoff exit | 3 in the option selection field.

3 Complete the Other Options section.

a Under the heading **Dynamic STSN devices**, specify whether to clear one or more of the following statuses at logoff for dynamic STSN terminal configurations used on an IMS system:

| If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the... |
---|---
Exit all conversations | /EXIT all conversations field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the Exclusive mode | Remove EXCLUSIVE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the Test mode | Remove TEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the Preset mode | Remove PRESET mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the MFSTEST mode | Remove MFSTEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the Response mode | Remove RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
Remove the Fast Path Response mode | Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |

b Under the heading **Static terminals**, specify whether to clear one or more of the following statuses at logoff for static terminal configurations used on an IMS system:

| If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the... |
---|---
Exit all conversations | /EXIT all conversations field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank. |
If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the...
---|---
Remove the Exclusive mode | Remove EXCLUSIVE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Test mode | Remove TEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Preset mode | Remove PRESET mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the MFSTEST mode | Remove MFSTEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Response mode | Remove RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Fast Path Response mode | Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
/DEQ queued messages for static SLU2 and 3270 device types | /DEQ messages field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.

3 Press Enter.

4 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify logoff options through the TSS Options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Logoff Options—TSS Options” on page 83 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA logoff user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA logoff user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or an ETA Logoff exit to provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifying Logoff Options—TSS Options

The Logoff Options – TSS Options panel allows you to activate the Logoff TSS options for Dynamic STSN devices and Static terminals.

**Figure 19: Panel Flow – Specifying Logoff Options - TSS Options**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Specify Logoff Options—TSS Options**

1. Go to the Logoff Options – TSS Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options – Logoff Options panel is displayed.
   d. From the IMSID Options – Logoff Options panel, type 2 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Logoff Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2. Use the fields under the heading For dynamic STSN devices to specify the type of TSS processing that should occur for dynamic terminals.
   a. Select how ETA should specify logoff TSS arguments for dynamic terminals.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODETBL</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Specify the Logoff TSS table name for dynamic terminals in the **LOGOFF TSS table name** field.

If you have not yet created this Logoff TSS table, record the name for later use when creating the table.

3 Use the fields under the heading For static terminals to specify the type of TSS processing that should occur for static terminals.

a Select how ETA should specify logoff TSS arguments for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODETBL</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Specify the Logoff TSS table name for static terminals in the **LOGOFF TSS table name** field.

If you have not yet created this Logoff TSS table, record the name for later use when creating the table.

c Press **Enter**.

4 Press **F3** three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify logoff options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions on creating the tables. Use the table names you recorded in <strong>Step 2 on page 83</strong> and <strong>Step 3 on page 84</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to...                  Then...
---                             ---
Specify default options that will be used if a TSS table search fails | See “Specifying Logoff Options—ETA Defaults” on page 79 for instructions.
Implement your customizations | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or an ETA Logoff exit to provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

## Autosignon Options

The ETA Autosignon feature eliminates the need for dynamic terminals and printers to sign on to IMS. If users in your facility do not currently sign on, this feature will allow them to continue operating in that manner.

This feature is similar to the IMS autologon feature but significantly increases flexibility and ease of use by:

- Reducing the amount of information users must provide at logon
- Eliminating the need to write and maintain user exits
- Providing additional flexibility with respect to LTERM and USER names
- Allowing you to specify options identical to those available with signon
- Allowing you to specify Autosignon options through TSS

## ETA Defaults

Specify system-wide Autosignon options that allow you to activate or specify the following options:

- Terminal types that should use the Autosignon feature
- Bypass RACF security for conversations
- Descriptor selection algorithm
- Autosignon (ASOT) interval
- Logoff at Autosignon
Autosignon Options

- IMS MSGDEL option
- IMS response mode option
- IMS ULC/UC option
- Automatic /EXIT of conversations remaining from a previous session
- Automatic /DEQUEUE of messages remaining from a previous session
- Deactivation of the response mode option remaining from a previous session

**Note**
Autosignon processing can clear the response mode setting from a previous session if the Deactivate response mode from previous session field is selected, but IMS does not maintain the status of this field.

In a shared queues local environment, Autosignon processing can clear the response mode setting if the Deactivate response mode from previous session field is selected.

- Use of the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERMs
- Retention of LTERM and USER structures after signoff

**LTERM/USER Options**

Use the Autosignon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel to specify the following LTERM/USER basic options for Autosignon:

- Use of user ID or node name for the LTERM and USER names
- Multiple signons per user ID, including the following options:
  - Maximum number of sessions per user ID
  - Include/exclude static terminal sessions in the calculation
  - Suffixing type

**TSS Options**

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to use a TSS table to activate or specify all available ETA options. This capability allows you to specify when any or all of the
options should be used. Options specified through TSS override all options specified using ETA Defaults.

The options specified using ETA Defaults are used under the following circumstances:

- For any options that are not specified in the TSS table
- If a TSS table search fails and you selected the TSS table processing option that causes ETA to continue Autosignon processing using ETA defaults

The Autosignon TSS option allows you to use two TSS tables to specify Autosignon information. One table stores information by node name and the other by user ID. A TSS table that stores information by user ID can be used to specify Autosignon options only if the option to propagate user ID information has been selected in the ETA logon options. Only one table can be used at a time to specify Autosignon information; ETA allows you to specify when each type of TSS table should be used.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on TSS tables.

Task Instructions for Autosignon Options

See the following sections for instructions:

- “Specifying Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 87
- “Specifying Autosignon Options—LTERM/USER Options” on page 92
- “Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options” on page 97

Specifying Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults

The Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to specify terminal types that should attempt to use the Autosignon feature and the defaults for the Autosignon options.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Note

If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

To Specify Basic Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults

1 Go to the Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Autosignon Options panel is displayed.

   d From the IMSID Options – Autosignon Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2 Specify whether the Autosignon feature should be used and how ETA should determine Autosignon options and security options.
a Under the heading **Select terminal types that will attempt autosignon**, type a slash (/) in the selection field beside each type of terminal that should use the Autosignon feature.

b Under the **Method** selection field, indicate how you want ETA to specify Autosignon options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify options through...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An AUTOSIGN TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Under the heading **Autosignon security options**, choose one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type a slash (/) in the...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the bypass RACF authorization for conversations option</td>
<td>Bypass RACF authorization for conversations selection field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppress the ETA autosignon failure messages</td>
<td>Suppress autosignon failure messages selection field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow RACF signon to occur automatically for SLU-1 device types</td>
<td>Use RACF userid for autosignon and SLU1 selection fields, and enter a valid RACF user ID in the associated <strong>Userid</strong> field. To deactivate this feature, leave the <strong>SLU1</strong> field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow RACF signon to occur automatically for SLU-P device types</td>
<td>Use RACF userid for autosignon and SLUP selection fields, and enter a valid RACF user ID in the associated <strong>Userid</strong> field. To deactivate this feature, leave the <strong>SLUP</strong> field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow RACF signon to occur automatically for Finance device types</td>
<td>Use RACF userid for autosignon and Finance selection fields, and enter a valid RACF user ID in the associated <strong>Userid</strong> field. To deactivate this feature, leave the <strong>Finance</strong> field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow RACF signon to occur automatically for SLU-2 device types</td>
<td>Use RACF userid for autosignon and SLU2 selection fields, and enter a valid RACF user ID in the associated <strong>Userid</strong> field. To deactivate this feature, leave the <strong>SLU2</strong> field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to...</td>
<td>Then type a slash (/) in the...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow RACF signon to occur automatically for 3270 device types</td>
<td>Use RACF userid for autosignon and 3270 selection fields, and enter a valid RACF user ID in the associated Userid field. To deactivate this feature, leave the 3270 field blank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Specify the descriptor selection order, Autosignoff (ASOT) interval, and IMS options that should be used for terminals that use the Autosignon feature.

a **Descriptor selection order**—Perform one of the following actions for the Autosignon feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the standard IMS descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>leave the descriptor selection order fields blank. Go to Step 3.b on page 90.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create your own descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>Type 1, 2, 3, 4, or a blank in the fields under the heading Descriptor selection order. A blank causes ETA to ignore the descriptor selection option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b **Autosignoff**—If you want to specify an ASOT interval, perform one of the following actions under the heading Autosignoff. Otherwise, leave this field blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want IMS to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the ASOT value you specify in the minutes field</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never automatically sign off inactive terminals</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically sign off immediately after last message is delivered</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

This ASOT interval overrides values set at logon, through the ETA Timeout Options - Terminal Type, and through IMS default values. See the ETA online help or “Timeout Options” on page 141 for additional information.

c **Logoff at Autosignoff**—Specify whether IMS should automatically log off terminals when these devices are automatically signed off after the ASOT interval expires. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.
If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

4 **Message delete option**—Type the option number of the type of messages that should not be displayed or printed.

5 **IMS response mode option**—Type the option number to specify a system-wide value for the IMS response mode option that determines whether USERs will be placed in response mode.

6 **LTERM Output option**—Activate this option if you want output from LTERMs to be displayed and printed in uppercase characters. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

7 **/EXIT conversations from previous session(s)**—Activate this option to automatically exit conversations from a previous session. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses an existing LTERM and USER structure that has an active conversation committed to it. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

8 **/DEQ messages from previous session(s)**—Activate this option to automatically dequeue all messages from a previous session. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses an existing LTERM and USER structure that has one or more messages queued to it. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

9 **Deactivate response mode from previous session**—Activate this option to cause ETA to reset the response mode state automatically in a USER structure. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses the same USER structure as a terminal that previously existed. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

10 **Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERM(s)**—Activate the message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERMs. Without ETA, this exit does not function for dynamic terminals under IMS. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

11 **Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff**—Activate this option to cause ETA to prevent IMS from deleting USER and LTERM structures automatically when terminals and printers are signed off. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.
12 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

13 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify LTERM/USER Autosignon options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Autosignon Options—LTERM/USER Options” on page 92 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Autosignon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options” on page 97 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Autosignon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Autosignon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Autosignon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying Autosignon Options—LTERM/USER Options

The Autosignon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel allows you to specify ETA LTERM/USER basic options for Autosignon.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

If you want to use the ETA option that allows multiple signons per user ID, the user IDs for your facility must be less than eight characters long.

If you want to propagate user ID or password information to IMS through VTAM USERDATA, you must configure your session manager to provide this information. If you want to use keywords to identify the information, you must use commas or spaces as delimiters between keywords.

To Specify Basic Autosignon Options—LTERM/USER Options

1  Go to the Autosignon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel.

   a  From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b  From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Autosignon Options panel is displayed.

   d  From the IMSID Options – Autosignon Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Autosignon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel is displayed.
2 Specify how to create LTERM and user names and whether to allow users to Autosignon more than once per user ID.

a Under the heading **LTERM/USER option**, type one of the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want the LTERM and USER names to equal the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID if present</td>
<td>1 in the selection field. You must also activate the Propagate password to IMS option available from the Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you select option 1 but user ID information is not available, the LTERM and USER names will equal the node name.

b **Allow multiple signons per userid** – Activate this option to allow users to sign on more than once per user ID.

The first time an IMS user signs on, ETA uses the user ID as the name of the LTERM and USER structure for that user ID. In subsequent signons, a suffix is attached to the user ID to create additional LTERM and USER names based on that user ID. If you choose Custom suffixing, the first signon will be suffixed.

**Note**

For this option to operate properly, you must perform the following tasks:

- Specify a value of **G**, **M**, or **Z** for the SGN parameter in the IMS control region.
- Specify that LTERM and USER names should equal the user ID in the **LTERM/USER option** field.
- Complete the **Suffixing type** and **Maximum sessions per userid** fields.
- The suffix added to the base user ID will be between one and three characters in length, depending on the length of the user ID.
- For example, if ABC is your user ID and you have selected numerical suffixing, the first LTERM name will be ABC, the second will be ABC001, the third will be ABC002, etc. If ABCDEF is your user ID, ETA can only append a two-character suffix, so the first LTERM name will be ABCDEF, the second will be ABCDEF01, the third will be ABCDEF02, and so forth.
- The length of your user ID and the suffixing technique you choose are the only factors that limit the maximum number of signons per user ID.
c **Suffixing type** – If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, you must select the type of suffixing that ETA will perform when creating LTERM and USER structures.

The following values are valid for this field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you type...</th>
<th>ETA appends the suffix using...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters 1 to 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters 1 to F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters A to Z and 0 to 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 in the selection field</td>
<td>a user-defined suffix list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of suffixing you choose depends on the number of signons per user ID you want to allow and the length of the user IDs at your organization. If user IDs are seven or fewer characters long and you require less than 10 signons per user ID, any of the suffixing techniques will be sufficient. If user IDs are seven characters long and you require up to 36 signons per user ID, alphanumeric suffixing will be sufficient.

Use the Custom suffixing option, if you require complete control of suffix data.

---

**Note**

If you choose Custom suffixing, the first signon will be suffixed.

---

**d** **Maximum sessions per userid** – If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, specify the maximum number of times a user can sign on with a single user ID in this field.

---

**Note**

The maximum number of sessions available per user ID depends on the length of the user ID and the suffixing technique that you choose.

---

**e** **Include static terminal sessions in calculation** – If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, activate or deactivate the option that includes static terminal sessions in the number of sessions calculation.

---

**Note**

Whether you activate or deactivate this option, the number of static terminals that can sign on is not limited.

Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option, or type a blank in this field to deactivate it.
Suffix length (for CUSTOM Suffixing type) – Specify a valid length for each user-defined suffix in the Suffix list field if you have selected CUSTOM in the Suffixing type field.

Valid values for this field are characters 1 to 3.

Note
You must populate the Suffix length and Suffix list fields if you have specified C (custom) in the Suffix Type field on the Autosignon and Signon TSS tables.

Suffix list (for CUSTOM Suffixing type) – Specify a user-defined suffix if you have selected CUSTOM in the Suffixing type field.

Enter a list of user-defined suffixes. Do not use commas, spaces, or any other characters to delimit each suffix in the list; however, spaces can be used as part of the user-defined suffix.

The Suffix length field determines the length of each suffix. For example, if you have specified 2 in the Suffix length field and you have entered A1A2A3A4A5A6A7A8A9AA in the Suffix list field, the first user-defined suffix is A1, the second is A2, and so forth.

Note
You must populate the Suffix length and Suffix list fields if you have specified C (custom) in the Suffix Type field on the Autosignon and Signon TSS tables.

3 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify Autosignon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options” on page 97 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Autosignon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Autosignon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to…</td>
<td>Then…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Autosignon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options

The Autosignon Options – TSS Options panel allows you to specify the number of TSS tables that are available for the Autosignon TSS option and the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search.

**Figure 22: Panel Flow – Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options**

#### Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

#### To Specify Autosignon Options—TSS Options

1. Go to the Autosignon Options – TSS Options panel.
   
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Autosignon Options panel is displayed.

d From the IMSID Options - Autosignon Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Autosignon Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

2 Use the fields under the heading TSS argument option to activate the Autosignon TSS option and specify how many TSS tables ETA should search to find Autosignon options. Leave the fields blank to deactivate the Autosignon TSS option and ETA performs no TSS table search.

a Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ETA to search the Autosignon TSS table by...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID if one is available or search by node name if the user ID is not available</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*b* Specify the TSS table name(s).

If you chose option 1 in the previous step (search by node name only), specify only the name of a node name TSS table. If you chose option 2, specify both a node name and a user ID TSS table. You can specify the same table name if one table contains information for both types of argument.

c Specify the action ETA should take if a TSS translate fails. Perform one of the following actions under the heading Table processing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ETA to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require signon</td>
<td>1 in the Table processing selection field and press F3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continue Autosignon using ETA Autosignon Defaults</td>
<td>2 in the Table processing selection field and press F3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note*

These searches are mutually exclusive. ETA will never search both tables, unless you use an ETA Autosignon exit.

b Specify the TSS table name(s).

If you chose option 1 in the previous step (search by node name only), specify only the name of a node name TSS table. If you chose option 2, specify both a node name and a user ID TSS table. You can specify the same table name if one table contains information for both types of argument.

c Specify the action ETA should take if a TSS translate fails. Perform one of the following actions under the heading Table processing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ETA to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require signon</td>
<td>1 in the Table processing selection field and press F3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continue Autosignon using ETA Autosignon Defaults</td>
<td>2 in the Table processing selection field and press F3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note*

If the TSS table search succeeds, processing will occur using the options specified in the TSS table.

3 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.
4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify Autosignon options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions. Use the TSS table names you specified in Step 2.b on page 98.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify default options that will be used if a TSS table search fails</td>
<td>See “Specifying Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 87 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Autosignon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Signon Options

ETA signon options are independent of ETA Autosignon options and override Autosignon options if you issue the /SIGN command from a terminal that has an LTERM and USER structure that was created through ETA Autosignon processing.

ETA Defaults

Specify system-wide signon options that allow you to activate or specify the following options:

- Bypass RACF security for conversations
- Bypass signon security for printers
- Descriptor selection algorithm
- Autosignoff (ASOT) interval
- Logoff at autosignoff
- IMS MSGDEL option
Signon Options

- IMS response mode option
- IMS ULC/UC option
- Automatic /EXIT of conversations remaining from a previous session
- Automatic /DEQUEUE of messages remaining from a previous session
- Deactivation of the response mode option remaining from a previous session

*Note*
Signon processing can clear the response mode setting from a previous session if the **Deactivate response mode from previous session** field is selected, but IMS does not retain the status of this field.

*Note*
In a shared queues local environment, Signon processing can clear the response mode setting if the **Deactivate response mode from previous session** field is selected.

- Use of the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERMs
- Retention of LTERM and USER structures after signoff

**LTERM/USER Options_2**

Use the Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel to specify the following LTERM/USER basic options for signon:

- Use of user ID or node name for the LTERM and USER names
- Multiple signons per user ID, including the following options:
  - Maximum number of sessions per user ID
  - Include/exclude static terminal sessions in the calculation
  - Suffixing type

**TSS Options**

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to use a TSS table to activate or specify all available ETA signon options.
This capability allows you to specify when any or all of the options should be used. Options specified through TSS override all options specified using ETA Defaults.

The options specified using ETA Defaults are used in the following situations:

- For any options that are not specified in the TSS table
- If a TSS table search fails and you selected the TSS table processing option that causes ETA to continue signon processing using ETA Defaults

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on TSS tables.

**Task Instructions for Signon Options**

See the following sections for instructions:

- “Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 101
- “Specifying Signon Options—LTERM/USER Options” on page 105
- “Specifying Signon Options—TSS Options” on page 110

**Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults**

The Signon Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to select whether ETA should attempt to use the ETA defaults, a TSS table, or a user exit to determine the Signon options. You can also use this panel to specify the defaults for the Signon options.

**Figure 23: Panel Flow for Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

---

**Note**

If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

---

**To Specify Basic Signon Options—ETA Defaults**

1. Go to the Signon Options – ETA Defaults panel:

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 7 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options - Signon Options panel is displayed.

   d. From the IMSID Options - Signon Options panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Signon Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. Specify whether the Signon feature should be used and how ETA should determine Signon options and security options.

   a. Under the **Method** selection field, indicate how you want ETA to specify Signon options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify options through...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A SIGNON TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. Under the heading Signon security options, choose one of the following:
If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the...
---|---
Activate the bypass RACF authorization for conversations option | Bypass RACF authorization for conversations selection field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Activate the bypass signon security for printers option | Bypass signon security for printers selection field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.

3 Specify the descriptor selection order, Autosignoff (ASOT) interval, and IMS options that should be used for terminals that use the Signon feature.

a **Descriptor selection order**—Perform one of the following actions for the Signon feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the standard IMS descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>Leave the descriptor selection order fields blank. Go to Step 3.b on page 90.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create your own descriptor search algorithm</td>
<td>Type 1, 2, 3, 4, or a blank in the fields under the heading <strong>Descriptor selection order</strong>. A blank causes ETA to ignore the descriptor selection option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b **Autosignoff**—If you want to specify an ASOT interval, perform one of the following actions under the heading **Autosignoff**. Otherwise, leave this field blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want IMS to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the ASOT value you specify in the minutes field</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never automatically sign off inactive terminals</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically sign off immediately after last message is delivered</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Note*
This ASOT interval overrides values set at logon, through the ETA Timeout Options - Terminal Type, and through IMS default values. See the ETA online help or “Timeout Options” on page 141 for additional information.

c **Logoff at Autosignoff**—Specify whether IMS should automatically log off terminals when these devices are automatically signed off after the ASOT interval expires. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.
Note
If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

d  **Message delete option**—Type the option number of the type of messages that should not be displayed or printed.

e  **IMS response mode option**—Type the option number to specify a system-wide value for the IMS response mode option that determines whether USERs will be placed in response mode.

f  **LTERM Output option**—Activate this option if you want output from LTERMs to be displayed and printed in uppercase characters. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

g  **/EXIT conversations from previous session(s)**—Activate this option to automatically exit conversations from a previous session. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses an existing LTERM and USER structure that has an active conversation committed to it. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

h  **/DEQ messages from previous session(s)**—Activate this option to automatically dequeue all messages from a previous session. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses an existing LTERM and USER structure that has one or more messages queued to it. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

i  **Deactivate response mode from previous session**—Activate this option to cause ETA to reset the response mode state automatically in a USER structure. If activated, this option takes effect when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses the same USER structure as a terminal that previously existed. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

j  **Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERM(s)**—Activate the message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERMs. Without ETA, this exit does not function for dynamic terminals under IMS. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

k  **Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff**—Activate this option to cause ETA to prevent IMS from deleting USER and LTERM structures automatically when terminals and printers are signed off. Type a slash (/) in the selection
field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

1. Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

m. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify LTERM/USER Signon options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Signon Options—LTERM/USER Options” on page 105 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Signon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options” on page 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Signon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Signon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Signon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifying Signon Options—LTERM/USER Options

The Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel allows you to specify ETA LTERM/USER basic options for Signon.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

If you want to use the ETA option that allows multiple signons per user ID, the user IDs for your facility must be less than eight characters long.

If you want to propagate user ID or password information to IMS through VTAM USERDATA, you must configure your session manager to provide this information. If you want to use keywords to identify the information, you must use commas or spaces as delimiters between keywords.

To Specify Basic Signon Options—TERM/USER Options

1 Go to the Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Signon Options panel is displayed.

   d From the IMSID Options – Signon Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel is displayed.
Specify how to create LTERM and user names and whether to allow users to sign on more than once per user ID.

a) Under the heading **LTERM/USER option**, type one of the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want the LTERM and USER names to equal the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) **Allow multiple signons per userid** – Activate this option to allow users to sign on more than once per user ID.

The first time an IMS user signs on, ETA uses the user ID as the name of the LTERM and USER structure for that user ID. In subsequent signons, a suffix is attached to the user ID to create additional LTERM and USER names based on that user ID. If you choose Custom suffixing, the first signon will be suffixed.

**Note**
For this option to operate properly, you must perform the following tasks:

- Specify a value of G or Z for the SGN parameter in the IMS control region.
- Specify that LTERM and USER names should equal the user ID in the LTERM/USER option field.
- Complete the **Suffixing type** and **Maximum sessions per userid** fields.
- The suffix added to the base user ID will be between one and three characters in length, depending on the length of the user ID.
- For example, if ABC is your user ID and you have selected numerical suffixing, the first LTERM name will be ABC, the second will be ABC001, the third will be ABC002, etc. If ABCDEF is your user ID, ETA can only append a two-character suffix, so the first LTERM name will be ABCDEF, the second will be ABCDEF01, the third will be ABCDEF02, and so forth.
- The length of your user ID and the suffixing technique you choose are the only factors that limit the maximum number of signons per user ID.

c) **Suffixing type** – If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, you must select the type of suffixing that ETA will perform when creating LTERM and USER structures.

The following values are valid for this field:
### If you type...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ETA appends the suffix using...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters 1 to 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters 1 to F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 in the selection field</td>
<td>characters A to Z and 0 to 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 in the selection field</td>
<td>a user-defined suffix list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of suffixing you choose depends on the number of signons per user ID you want to allow and the length of the user IDs at your organization. If user IDs are seven or fewer characters long and you require less than 10 signons per user ID, any of the suffixing techniques will be sufficient. If user IDs are seven characters long and you require up to 36 signons per user ID, alphanumeric suffixing will be sufficient.

Use the Custom suffixing option, if you require complete control of suffix data.

**Note**

If you choose Custom suffixing, the first signon will be suffixed.

d  **Maximum sessions per userid**—If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, specify the maximum number of times a user can sign on with a single user ID in this field.

**Note**

The maximum number of sessions available per user ID depends on the length of the user ID and the suffixing technique that you choose.

e  **Include static terminal sessions in calculation**—If you have activated the ETA option that allows users to sign on more than once with a single user ID, activate or deactivate the option that includes static terminal sessions in the number of sessions calculation.

**Note**

Whether you activate or deactivate this option, the number of static terminals that can sign on is not limited.

Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option, or type a blank in this field to deactivate it.

f  **Suffix length (for CUSTOM Suffixing type)**—Specify a valid length for each user-defined suffix in the **Suffix list** field, if you have selected CUSTOM in the **Suffixing type** field.

Valid values for this field are characters 1 to 3.
You must populate the **Suffix length** and **Suffix list** fields if you have specified C (custom) in the **Suffix Type** field on the Autosignon and Signon TSS tables.

**Suffix list (for CUSTOM Suffixing type)** – Specify a user-defined suffix, if you have selected CUSTOM in the **Suffixing type** field.

Enter a list of user-defined suffixes. Do not use commas, spaces, or any other characters to delimit each suffix in the list; however, spaces can be used as part of the user-defined suffix.

The **Suffix length** field determines the length of each suffix.

For example, if you have specified 2 in the **Suffix length** field and you have entered A1A2A3A4A5A6A7A8A9AA in the **Suffix list** field, the first user-defined suffix is A1, the second is A2, and so forth.

You must populate the **Suffix length** and **Suffix list** fields if you have specified C (custom) in the **Suffix Type** field on the Autosignon and Signon TSS tables.

3 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify Signon options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Signon Options—TSS Options” on page 110 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Signon user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Signon user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to...  Then...
Implement your customizations          Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Signon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

Specifying Signon Options—TSS Options

The Signon Options – TSS Options panel allows you to specify the number of TSS tables that are available for the Signon TSS option and the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search.

Figure 25: Panel Flow – Specifying Signon Options—TSS Options

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify Signon Options—TSS Options

1. Go to the Signon Options – TSS Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Signon Options panel is displayed.

d From the IMSID Options – Signon Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Signon Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2 Use the fields under the heading TSS table search order to activate the Signon TSS option and specify how many TSS tables ETA should search to find Signon options. Leave the fields blank to deactivate the Signon TSS option and ETA performs no TSS table search.

   a Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ETA to search the Signon TSS table by...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID only</td>
<td>1 in the Signon userid TSS table name selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name only</td>
<td>2 in the Signon node name TSS table name selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID first and then another Signon TSS table by node name</td>
<td>1 in the Signon userid TSS table name selection field and 2 in the Signon node name TSS table name selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name first and then another Signon TSS table by user ID</td>
<td>1 in the Signon node name TSS table name selection field and 2 in the Signon userid TSS table name selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b Specify the TSS table name(s) in the appropriate fields.
   c If you have not yet created one or more of the TSS tables, record the TSS table name(s) for later use in creating the table(s).

   Note
   The action ETA takes after the search depends on options you select in the Table 1 processing options and the Table 2 processing options fields.

3 Use the fields under the heading Table 1 processing options to specify the type of processing that should occur when searches of the first or only TSS table succeed and when searches fail.

   a Specify the type of processing that should occur when a match is found during a search of the first TSS table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Use the data</td>
<td>1 in the first selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you are using... | And you want to... | Then type...
---|---|---
Two TSS tables | Use the data and ignore the second table | 1 in the first selection field
Save the data and search the second TSS table | 2 in the first selection field

b Specify the type of processing that should occur when a TSS search of the first table fails.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Allow Signon processing using the ETA defaults you have specified</td>
<td>1 in the second selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the Signon</td>
<td>2 in the second selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables</td>
<td>Search the second TSS table</td>
<td>1 in the second selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the Signon</td>
<td>2 in the second selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you are using...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One TSS table</td>
<td>Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu and read “page 113” at the end of this section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two TSS tables</td>
<td>Go to Step 4 on page 76.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Use the fields under the heading **Table 2 processing options** to specify the type of processing that TSS should perform when searches of the second TSS table succeed and when searches fail.

a Specify the type of processing that should occur when a match is found in the second TSS table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only the second search succeeds</td>
<td>Use the data</td>
<td>1 in the first selection field and 2 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both searches succeed</td>
<td>Use the data from the first table only</td>
<td>1 in the first selection field and 1 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the data from the second table only</td>
<td>1 in the first selection field and 2 in the table field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Merge data from both tables</td>
<td>2 in the first selection field and use the table fields to specify which table supersedes the other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b Specify the type of processing that should occur when a TSS search of the second table fails.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If...</th>
<th>And you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The first search succeeded</td>
<td>Use the data from the first table</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the Signon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both searches failed</td>
<td>Allow Signon processing using the ETA defaults you have specified</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject the Signon</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify Signon options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions. Use the TSS table names you specified in Step 3.a on page 111.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify default options that will be used if a TSS table search fails</td>
<td>See Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults on page 101 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Signon exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Signoff Options**

The ETA Signoff feature allows you to clear terminal control settings that were set during the current terminal session. This feature allows dynamic terminal structures to be deleted during signoff processing, even though one or more of these settings were previously set.
ETA Defaults

Specify system-wide logoff options that allow you to activate or deactivate the following options at logoff:

- Exit all conversations
- Clear the Exclusive mode
- Clear the Test mode
- Clear the Preset mode
- Clear the MFSTEST mode
- Clear the Response mode
- Clear the Fast Path Response mode
- Enable automatic /DEQ of queued messages for dynamic SLU2 and 3270 device types

**Note**

Signoff processing can clear the Test, Preset, and Response mode settings from a previous session if the Remove TEST mode, Remove PRESET mode, and Remove RESPONSE mode fields are selected, but the statuses of these fields are not retained by IMS.

In a shared queues local environment, Signoff processing can clear the response mode setting if the Remove RESPONSE mode field is selected.

TSS Options

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to perform the same Signoff functions as the ETA Defaults, except that you can specify these features to be performed on an individual terminal, terminal type, or mode table.

Options specified through TSS override all options specified by using ETA Defaults. However, the options specified by using ETA Defaults will be used for any options that are not specified in the TSS table.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information on TSS tables.
Task Instructions for Signoff Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting Signoff options:

- “Specifying Signoff Options—ETA Defaults” on page 115
- “Specifying Signoff Options—TSS Options” on page 118

Specifying Signoff Options—ETA Defaults

The Signoff Options – ETA Defaults panel allows you to specify system-wide signoff options for dynamic and static terminals.

Figure 26: Panel Flow – Specifying Signoff Options—ETA Defaults

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify Signoff Options—ETA Defaults

1 Go to the Signoff Options – ETA Defaults panel.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 8 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Signoff Options panel is displayed.
d. From the IMSID Options - Signoff Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Signoff Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. Complete the Signoff Options section.

a. Use the field under the heading Dynamic terminals to specify the options you want to use for dynamic terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a customer-modified signoff exit</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Use the field under the heading Static terminals to specify the options you want to use for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a customer-modified signoff exit</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Complete the Other Options section.

a. Under the heading *Dynamic terminals*, specify whether to clear one or more of the following statuses at signoff for dynamic terminal configurations used on an IMS system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type a slash (/) in the...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exit all conversations</td>
<td>/EXIT all conversations field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the Exclusive mode</td>
<td>Remove EXCLUSIVE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the Test mode</td>
<td>Remove TEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the Preset mode</td>
<td>Remove PRESET mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the MFSTEST mode</td>
<td>Remove MFSTEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the Response mode</td>
<td>Remove RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the...
---|---
Remove the Fast Path Response mode | Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
/DEQ queued messages for dynamic SLU2 and 3270 device types | /DEQ messages field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.

b Under the heading Static terminals, specify whether to clear one or more of the following statuses at signoff for static terminal configurations used on an IMS system:

| If you want to... | Then type a slash (/) in the...
---|---
Exit all conversations | /EXIT all conversations field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Exclusive mode | Remove EXCLUSIVE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Test mode | Remove TEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Preset mode | Remove PRESET mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the MFSTEST mode | Remove MFSTEST mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Response mode | Remove RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.
Remove the Fast Path Response mode | Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode field. To deactivate this feature, leave this field blank.

c Press **Enter**.

4 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

| If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Specify signoff options through the TSS Options | See “Specifying Signoff Options—TSS Options” on page 118 for instructions.
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Create an ETA signoff user exit that takes advantage of ETA features | See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.
Make an ETA signoff user exit available to an IMS system | See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.
Implement your customizations | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Signoff exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

### Specifying Signoff Options—TSS Options

The Signoff Options – TSS Options panel allows you to activate the Signoff TSS options for dynamic and static terminals.

**Figure 27: Panel Flow – Specifying Signoff Options—TSS Options**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Specify Signoff Options—TSS Options**

1. Go to the Signoff Options – TSS Options panel.
   
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 8 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Signoff Options panel is displayed.

d From the IMSID Options – Signoff Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Signoff Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

ETA displays options for the new IMSID.

2 Use the fields under the heading For dynamic terminals to specify the type of TSS processing that should occur for dynamic terminals.

   a Select how ETA should specify signoff TSS arguments for dynamic terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID (if present, otherwise ETA uses the node name)</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Specify the SIGNOFF TSS table name for dynamic terminals in the SIGNOFF TSS table name field.

If you have not yet created this SIGNOFF TSS table, record the name for later use when creating the table.

3 Use the fields under the heading For static terminals to specify the type of TSS processing that should occur for static terminals.

   a Select how ETA should specify signoff TSS arguments for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID (if present, otherwise ETA uses the node name)</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Specify the SIGNOFF TSS table name for static terminals in the SIGNOFF TSS table name field.

If you have not yet created this SIGNOFF TSS table, record the name for later use when creating the table.

4 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.
5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify signoff options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions on creating the tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify default options that will be used if a TSS</td>
<td>See Specifying Signoff Options—ETA Defaults on page 115 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table search fails</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Signoff exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DFS3649A Message Replacement Options

The ETA online interface allows you to specify DFS3649A replacement options for dynamic and static terminals through the ETA Defaults, by terminal type, or by activating the TSS feature for specifying DFS3649A replacement options.

ETA Defaults

Specify whether ETA should use the ETA Defaults, a TSS table, or call an ETA user exit to determine the DFS3649A replacement options for Dynamic and Static terminals.

You must include at least one of the following text options in the replacement for the DFS3649A message:

- Error return code
- Error message text

The replacement you choose will be used when IMS would normally issue the DFS3649A message.
Terminal Type Options

ETA allows you to choose, by terminal type, one of the following screen formats, messages, or actions as a replacement for the standard DFS3649A message:

- User format (based on signon return code, if desired)
- DFS2002 message (with user format, if supplied)
- User message (with user format, if supplied)
- Blank screen
- Log off the terminal

The replacement you choose will be used when IMS would normally issue the DFS3649A message.

TSS Options

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to perform the same DFS3649A replacement options as the ETA Terminal Type options, except that you can specify the feature to be performed on an individual terminal, terminal type, or reason for message.

In addition to the options listed for ETA Defaults and Terminal Type, you can also specify conditions under which you do not want a replacement but instead want IMS to display the DFS3649A message.

You can use the following TSS table types to specify DFS3649A replacement options:

- DFS3649A table
- User-defined table

If you use the DFS3649A table type, you can use up to three types of arguments:

- Node name
- Terminal type
- Reason for the message

Allowing use of more than one type of argument provides additional flexibility and reduces the amount of data entry required for creating TSS tables. To increase the
search efficiency, you can specify the order in which TSS should use the argument types.

DFS3649A replacements you specify through TSS override all replacements you specify through ETA Defaults. However, DFS3649A message replacements you specify by terminal type serve as defaults if the TSS translate fails.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for more information on TSS tables.

Task Instructions for DFS3649A Message Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting DFS3649A Message options:

- “Replacing the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults” on page 122
- “Replacing the DFS3649A Message—Terminal Type” on page 125
- “Replacing the DFS3649A Message - TSS Options” on page 128

Replacing the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults

ETA allows you to replace the DFS3649A message with one of several options. You specify system-wide replacements individually for static and dynamic terminals.

Figure 28: Panel Flow – Replacing the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Replace the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults

1. Go to the DFS3649A Message Options – ETA Defaults panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 9 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - DFS3649A Message Options panel is displayed.
   d. From the IMSID Options - DFS3649A Message Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3649A Message Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. Complete the Message Selection Options section.
   a. Use the field under the heading Dynamic terminals to specify the options you want to use for dynamic terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A customer-modified ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. Use the field under the heading Static terminals to specify the options you want to use for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A customer-modified ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Include one or both of the following message text options in the replacement for the DFS3649A message:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to include the...</th>
<th>Then type a slash (/) in the...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Error return code</td>
<td>Include error return code field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error message text</td>
<td>Include error message text field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You must include at least one selection.

4 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3649A message options by terminal type</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3649A Message—Terminal Type” on page 125 for instructions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3649A message options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3649A Message - TSS Options” on page 128 for instructions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager for information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>See “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Implement your customizations | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3649A message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

### Replacing the DFS3649A Message—Terminal Type

The DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type panel allows you to specify DFS3649A Message replacement options for each terminal type used on an IMS system. For each terminal type, you can specify separate replacements for dynamic and static terminals.

**Figure 29: Panel Flow – Replacing the DFS3649A Message—Terminal Type**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**Note**

If you do not want to specify a replacement for a particular type of terminal, leave the select field blank for that type of terminal. If you do not want to specify a replacement for ANY terminal types, do not complete this panel. Values you specify on this panel may be used as defaults when TSS table searches fail.
To Replace the DFS3649A Message—Terminal Type

1  Go to the DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type panel.
   a  From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b  From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 9 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - DFS3649A Message Options panel is displayed.
   d  From the IMSID Options - DFS3649A Message Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type panel is displayed.

2  Choose replacements for the DFS3649A message by terminal type. When specifying replacements, consider the following conditions:
   a  If you do not specify a replacement for a terminal type, all terminals of that type will use the DFS3649A message.
   b  If you activate the DFS3649A TSS option, the values you specify on this panel are used as defaults if the TSS table search fails.
   a  Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to a terminal type to access a DFS3649A Message Options - Terminal Type pop-up window and edit the DFS3649A Message options for the selected type of terminals.
   b  Use the selection fields under the headings Dynamic terminals message replacement option or Static terminals message replacement option to specify the replacement you want performed for dynamic or static terminals of this type. If you do not specify a replacement, the DFS3649A message will be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to replace the DFS3649A message with...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A user format only</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A DFS2002 message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>3 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A blank screen</td>
<td>4 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to replace the DFS3649A message with... | Then type...
---|---
IMS logging off the terminal | 5 in the selection field.

---

**Note**

To customize the user message replacement option, see “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.

c Use format in Signon RC message module—If you activate this option and signon fails, the signon return code message will be displayed with the format defined for that return code in the Signon RC message module. If the field is not activated, the signon return code message will be displayed in its default format.

Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field under the headings Dynamic terminals message replacement option or Static terminals message replacement option to indicate use of this option for dynamic or static terminals of this type; otherwise, leave this field blank.

The corresponding format name is supplied on the Signon RC Message Customization panel accessed via the Message Customization option from the Administration Menu.

The **Msg Mod** field on the DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type panel will indicate if this option has been selected for dynamic or static terminals of each terminal type.

d Press F3.

e Repeat Step 2 on page 126 for each terminal type used on the IMS system.

3 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3649A message options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3649A Message - TSS Options” on page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <em>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</em> for information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to…</th>
<th>Then…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>see “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Implement your customizations           | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.  
If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3649A message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.  |

### Replacing the DFS3649A Message - TSS Options

The DFS3649A Message Options - TSS Options panel allows you to activate the DFS3649A Message TSS option and specify the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search. If TSS table processing is unsuccessful, the Terminal Type options (if any) are used to replace the DFS3649A message.

**Figure 30: Panel Flow – Replacing the DFS3649A Message—TSS Options**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Replace the DFS3649A Message—TSS Options

1 Go to the DFS3649A Message Options – TSS Options panel.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 9 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – DFS3649A Message Options panel is displayed.
   d From the IMSID Options – DFS3649A Message Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3649A Message Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2 Specify the TSS table name in the appropriate TSS table name field(s):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the TSS option or change the table name</td>
<td>Type the TSS table name and record the name for later use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the TSS option</td>
<td>Remove the TSS table name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Specify the TSS table type in the appropriate TSS table type field(s):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The DFS4639A TSS table</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user-defined TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and indicate in the Position field the position in the TSS table where the message replacement option is located</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 TSS argument search order - Perform one of the following actions for this type of terminal.
When ETA searches the TSS table, if you want to use the argument type of...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument Type</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Node name</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Terminal type</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason for message</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Reason for message</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5  Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6  Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <em>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</em> for information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>See “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to… | Then…
--- | ---
Implement your customizations | Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3649A message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.

**DFS3650I Message Replacement Options**

The ETA online interface allows you to specify DFS3650I replacement options for dynamic and static terminals through the ETA Defaults, by terminal type, or by activating the TSS feature for specifying DFS3649A replacement options.

**ETA Defaults**

Specify whether ETA should use the ETA Defaults, a TSS table, or call an ETA user exit to determine the DFS3650I replacement options for Dynamic and Static terminals. You can also select to replace the DFS3650I message with a password message specifying when the password will expire.

You can also select to replace the DFS3650I message with a password message specifying when the password will expire.

The replacement you choose will be used when IMS would normally issue the DFS3650I message.

**Terminal Type Options 3**

ETA allows you to choose, by terminal type, one of the following screen formats, messages, or actions as a replacement for the standard DFS3650I message:

- User format
- DFS2002 message (with user format, if supplied)
The replacement you choose will be used when IMS would normally issue the DFS3650I message.

**TSS Options 8**

Specify TSS-driven options that allow you to perform the same DFS3650I replacement options as the ETA Terminal Type options, except that you can specify the feature to be performed on an individual terminal, terminal type, or reason for message.

In addition to the options listed for ETA Defaults and Terminal Type, you can also specify conditions under which you do not want a replacement but instead want IMS to display the DFS3650I message.

You can use the following TSS table types to specify DFS3650I replacement options:

- DFS3650I table
- User-defined table

If you use the DFS3650I table type, you can use up to three types of arguments:

- Node name
- Terminal type
- Reason for the message

Allowing use of more than one type of argument provides additional flexibility and reduces the amount of data entry required for creating TSS tables. To increase the search efficiency, you can specify the order in which TSS should use the argument types.

DFS3650I replacements you specify through TSS override all replacements you specify through In addition to the options listed for ETA Defaults and Terminal Type, you can also specify conditions under which you do not want a replacement but instead want IMS to display the DFS3650I message. Defaults. However,
DFS3650I message replacements you specify by terminal type serve as defaults if the TSS translate fails.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for more information on TSS tables.

Task Instructions for DFS3650I Message Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting DFS3650I Message options:

- “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—ETA Defaults” on page 133
- “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type” on page 136
- “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—TSS Options” on page 138

Replacing the DFS3650I Message—ETA Defaults

ETA allows you to replace the DFS3650I message with one of several options. You specify system-wide replacements individually for static and dynamic terminals.

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.
To Replace the DFS3650I Message—ETA Defaults

1  Go to the DFS3650I Message Options – ETA Defaults panel.
   a  From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b  From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 10 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel is displayed.
   d  From the IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2  Complete the Message Selection Options section.
   a  Use the field under the heading Dynamic terminals to specify the options you want to use for dynamic terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A customer-modified ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b  Use the field under the heading Static terminals to specify the options you want to use for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A customer-modified ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3  Specify the number of days ETA will display a password expiration message in the Number of days to display password expiration message field for dynamic and static terminals. A valid value is from 0 to 255. If you leave this field blank, ETA inserts the default value of 5.

   This option applies only if the following conditions have been met:
You must select the **Password message expiration** as the message replacement option on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel.

- Signon processing must have completed.

- You must have the RACF security package only; ACF2 and Top Secret are not supported.

4. Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3650I message options by terminal type</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type” on page 136.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3650I message options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—TSS Options” on page 138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <em>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</em> for information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>See “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3650I message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Replacing the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type

The DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel allows you to specify DFS3650I Message replacement options for each terminal type used on an IMS system. For each terminal type, you can specify separate replacements for dynamic and static terminals.

Figure 32: Panel Flow – Replacing the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Note

If you do not want to specify a replacement for a particular type of terminal, leave the select field blank for that type of terminal. If you do not want to specify a replacement for ANY terminal types, do not complete this panel. Values you specify on this panel may be used as defaults when TSS table searches fail.

To Replace the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type

1 Go to the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 10 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel is displayed.
d From the IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel is displayed.

2 Choose replacements for the DFS3650I message by terminal type. When specifying replacements, consider the following conditions:

- If you do not specify a replacement for a terminal type, all terminals of that type will use the DFS3650I message.

- If you activate the DFS3650I TSS option, the values you specify on this panel are used as defaults if the TSS table search fails.

a Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to a terminal type to access a DFS3650I Message Options - Terminal Type pop-up window and edit the DFS3650I Message options for the selected type of terminals.

b Use the selection fields under the headings Dynamic terminals message replacement option or Static terminals message replacement option to specify the replacement you want performed for dynamic or static terminals of this type. If you do not specify a replacement, the DFS3650I message will be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to replace the DFS3650I message with...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A user format only</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A DFS2002 message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>3 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A blank screen</td>
<td>4 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A DFS058I message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>5 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A password expiration message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>6 in the selection field and type the user format in the Optional User format name field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
You can customize the user message and password expiration message replacement options. To customize these options, see “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.

c Press F3.

d Repeat Step 2 on page 137 for each terminal type used on the IMS system.
3 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify DFS3650I message options through the ETA TSS options</td>
<td>See “Replacing the DFS3649A Message - TSS Options” on page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <em>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</em> for information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>See “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3650I message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Replacing the DFS3650I Message—TSS Options

The DFS3650I Message Options – TSS Options panel allows you to activate the DFS3650I Message TSS option and specify the type of processing that should occur after a TSS table search. If TSS table processing is unsuccessful, the Terminal Type options (if any) are used to replace the DFS3650I message.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Replace the DFS3650I Message—TSS Options

1. Go to the DFS3650I Message Options – TSS Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 10 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel is displayed.
   d. From the IMSID Options - DFS3650I Message Options panel, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

2. Specify the TSS table name in the appropriate TSS table name field(s):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to…</th>
<th>Then…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the TSS option or change the table name</td>
<td>type the TSS table name and record the name for later use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the TSS option</td>
<td>remove the TSS table name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Specify the TSS table type in the appropriate TSS table type field(s):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The DFS4639A TSS table</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user-defined TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and indicate in the <strong>Position</strong> field the position in the TSS table where the message replacement option is located</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **TSS argument search order** - Perform one of the following actions for this type of terminal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When ETA searches the TSS table, if you want to use the argument type of...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Node name</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Terminal type</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason for message</td>
<td>1, 2, or 3 in the <strong>Reason for message</strong> field to indicate when in the search sequence ETA should search by node name. A blank in this field excludes this argument type from the search.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <strong>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</strong> for information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a user message</td>
<td>See “<strong>Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text</strong>” on page 311.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a TSS table that specifies message replacement options</td>
<td>See “<strong>Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature</strong>” on page 175 for information and instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “<strong>ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits</strong>” on page 438 on page 513.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to…</td>
<td>Then…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA Greetings Message exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and reloading Exits” on page 246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a user message or user format will be used to replace the DFS3650I message, or that a TSS table or ETA Greetings Message exit provide message replacement information; the user message, user format, TSS table, or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Timeout Options

The ETA Timeout Options – Terminal Type panel allows you to specify ASOT and ALOT intervals by terminal type.

This panel also allows you to activate options that notify the Master Terminal Operator, the OS console, or both when terminals automatically sign off or log off. If you want to specify ASOT and ALOT options through the ETA TSS feature, use the TSS options available with the ETA Logon, Signon, and Autosignon options.

## Timeout Hierarchy

ETA lets you set ALOT and ASOT values using any of the following methods:

- Timeout options
- IMSID Logon, Signon, and Autosignon options
- TSS Logon Signon, and Autosignon options
- Logon, Signon, and Autosignon exits

The ALOT and ASOT intervals that you specify through ETA override IMS default values. If you do not specify an ASOT or ALOT interval for a terminal type that is used on an IMS system, IMS will use the value specified through IMS options.

If you specify ALOT and ASOT intervals using two or more of the ETA or IMS methods, the values that are used will be determined by the hierarchy that is shown in Figure 34 on page 142.
ETA provides a timeout-related feature that lets you specify logoff at autosignoff. Figure 35 on page 143 illustrates the timeout hierarchy that is associated with this feature.

**Note**

If you specify ASOT and Logoff at Autosignoff values through the Unsolicited Output TSS table processing option, these values will not be overridden by subsequent processes.

**Figure 34: Logon and Signon Timeout Hierarchy**
Figure 35 on page 143 shows the ETA override hierarchy for logoff at autosignoff. IMS does not provide an equivalent feature.

**Figure 35: Logoff at Autosignoff Timeout Hierarchy**

Table 1 on page 143 lists information sources on specifying ASOT and ALOT intervals through other ETA and IMS options.

**Table 1: Information Sources for Timeout Intervals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For information or instructions on specifying timeouts through the...</th>
<th>See...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMS Signon exit</td>
<td>IBM publication <em>IMS Customization Guide</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Signon exit</td>
<td>“ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Signon TSS table</td>
<td>“Specifying Signon Options—TSS Options” on page 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA default options for Signon</td>
<td>“Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 101 ETA Autosignon exit</td>
<td>“ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA Autosignon TSS table</td>
<td>“Specifying Autosignon Options—TSS Options” on page 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA default options for Autosignon</td>
<td>“Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASOT and ALOT values and notification options that you specify on the Timeout Options - Terminal Type panel do not modify standard IMS and ETA logon, signon, or autosignon processing.

**Note**

The ETA signon and autosignon features are mutually exclusive. If you use the autosignon feature, the ASOT interval you can specify through the ETA signon options takes effect only if autosignon fails or if the /SIGN command is issued from a terminal that uses an LTERM and USER structure that was created through autosignon.

### Specifying Timeout Intervals by Terminal Type

ETA allows you to override the default IMS ASOT and ALOT values by terminal type. ETA also provides a feature that automatically notifies the MTO, OS console, or both when terminals are logged off or signed off because a timeout interval has expired.

**Figure 36: Specifying Timeout Intervals by Terminal Type**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify Timeout Intervals and Options by Terminal Type

1. Go to the IMSID Options – Timeout Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 11 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Timeout Options panel is displayed.

2. Specify timeout intervals and notification options by terminal type.
   a. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to a terminal type to access a Timeout Options - Terminal Type pop-up window and edit the timeout intervals and notification options for the selected type of terminals.
   b. Autologoff - If you want to specify an ALOT interval for this type of terminal, perform one of the following actions under the heading Autologoff. Otherwise, leave this field blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want IMS to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the ALOT value you specify in the minutes field</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never automatically log off inactive terminals or printers</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically log off immediately after signoff completes</td>
<td>3 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
The ALOT and ASOT intervals you specify on this panel override IMS default values.

c. Autosignoff - If you want to specify an ASOT interval for this type of terminal, perform one of the following actions under the heading Autosignoff. Otherwise, leave this field blank.
If you want IMS to... | Then type...
---|---
Use the ASOT value you specify in the minutes field | 1 in the selection field and type the interval in the minutes field.
Never automatically sign off inactive terminals or printers | 2 in the selection field.
Automatically sign off immediately after last message is delivered | 3 in the selection field.

**d**  **Logoff at Autosignoff**- Specify whether IMS should automatically log off terminals and printers when these devices are automatically signed off after the ASOT interval expires. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

**e**  **Send message to IMS Master Terminal (Autologoff notification)**—Specify whether ETA should automatically notify the IMS Master Terminal (MTO) when terminals are logged off because the ALOT interval has expired. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

**f**  **Send message to the OS Console (Autologoff notification)** - Specify whether ETA should automatically notify the OS console when terminals are logged off because the ALOT interval has expired. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

**g**  **Send message to IMS Master Terminal (Autosignoff notification)** - Specify whether ETA should automatically notify the IMS Master Terminal (MTO) when terminals are signed off because the ASOT interval has expired. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

**h**  **Send message to the OS Console (Autosignoff notification)** - Specify whether ETA should automatically notify the OS console when terminals are signed off because the ASOT interval has expired. Type a slash (/) in this field to activate the option or type a blank in this field to deactivate the option.

**i**  Press F3.

**j**  Repeat this step for each type of terminal used at your facility.

3 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.
Where to go from here

If you want to implement your customizations, then refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

Enhanced Command Security Options

The Enhanced Command Security feature allows you to implement IMS command security within the IMS control region or the DCCTL region by command name and the first keyword within the command.

Standard Command Security

Standard IMS command security is by command name only. A user that has authority to use a command has the authority to use all of the command keywords.

For example, a user that has been granted the authority to issue the `/STOP TRANSACTION` command also has the authority to issue the `/STOP DC` command.

Enhanced Command Security

Enhanced Command Security allows IMS command protection to be more granular by protecting the first keyword of a command as well as the command.

A user may be granted authority to enter some keywords but not others. For example, a user may be granted authority to issue the `/CHE` command but may not be authorized to issue the `/CHE DUMPQ` command.

ETA also allows you to tailor IMS commands to allow or disallow the ALL parameter, generic parameters, or a given command or keyword.

Enhanced Command Security may be used to protect commands from any of the following command input sources:

- Dynamic terminals
- Static terminals
- IMS time-controlled operations (TCO) interface
Implementing Enhanced Command Security

Before Enhanced Command Security can be used in the IMS control region, you must:

- Define the RACF class(es) that Enhanced Command Security requires
  See “Defining RACF Classes” on page 298 for information on defining these classes.

- Tailor the Enhanced Command Security IMSID options
  See “Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—ETA Defaults” on page 153 for information on tailoring these IMSID options.

- Create access profiles for IMS commands which are to be protected
  See “Creating Access Profiles” on page 299.

- Revise the default Command Processing table and tailor it to your site-specific needs if required
  See “Defining Command Processing Tables” on page 300 and “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317 for information on tailoring the default Command Processing table.

Maintaining Security Information via RACF

The Enhanced Command Security interface uses RACF (or equivalent security package) facilities to maintain security information concerning which commands and keywords are protected as well as which users are authorized for each command/keyword combination. This interface is accessed through the System Authorization Facility (SAF) standard RACROUTE macro.

Two new RACF classes are used in much the same manner as the CIMS/DIMS classes are used by IMS command security. If you do not need to group commands,
then only one class is required. All interfaces to security information are accessed through standard SAF macros so any security package that supports SAF is able to use the Enhanced Command Security feature.

See “Enhanced Command Security” on page 297 for information on defining RACF classes and creating command access profiles.

Creating an Accessor Environment Element

To perform the actual security verification using the RACROUTE macro, RACF requires an Accessor Environment Element (ACEE) that is used as the target of the authorization call. The ACEE may be built by IMS or by ETA:

- The ACEE is built by IMS if the terminal entering the command has performed a RACF signon. For example, DFSPB xxx specifies or implies RCF=T and /SIGN ON was performed. Under this circumstance, the CTBRACFT field in the CTB control block will point to the ACEE.

- ETA will build the ACEE if any of the following conditions apply:
  - The terminal has not issued a /SIGN ON.
  - The terminal has issued a /SIGN ON, but RACF is not active for signon security.
  - ACF2 is used as the security package.
    In these cases, ETA will determine which user ID should be used for this terminal and will create the ACEE so the security check can be performed. When the user ID is not supplied as a result of a RACF /SIGN ON, ETA determines the command security user ID in the following manner:
    - If ETA AUTOSIGNON is active and an ETA AUTOSIGNON TSS table is used that specifies a command security user ID, it will be used.
    - If ETA SIGNON is active and an ETA SIGNON TSS table is used that specifies a command security user ID, it will be used. The SIGNON command security user ID will override the AUTOSIGNON command security user ID.
    - If a command security user ID is not specified through ETA AUTOSIGNON or ETA SIGNON and if the IMSID options for Enhanced Command Security indicate that the COMMANDS TSS table should be used for determining the command security user ID and the COMMANDS TSS table contains an entry for the terminal, the command security user ID from the COMMANDS TSS table will be used.
    - If a command security user ID is not specified through the AUTOSIGNON, SIGNON, or COMMANDS TSS table, the default user ID specified in the IMSID options for this environment will be used.
—If a valid command security user ID is not specified, the user ID associated with the IMS control region will be used.

**Considerations and Restrictions**

Before you can use Enhanced Command Security in an IMS control region, be aware of the following considerations and restrictions related to activating and running this security feature:

- Before Enhanced Command Security will be active in an IMS control region, the RACF class(es) it uses must be defined. See “Enhanced Command Security” on page 297 for information on defining RACF class(es).

- Enhanced Command Security does not require a specific setting for the DFSPBxxx RCF parameter; it will function with any RCF setting as long as RACF (or equivalent security package) is available to the IMS control region.

- RACF signon is not required for Enhanced Command Security to function. However, because RACF is used to retain the security information, a RACF user ID is required to perform command authorization. If RACF signon is performed, the associated user ID will be used for command authorization. When RACF signon is not performed, the RACF command security user ID must be specified in the ETA TSS AUTOSIGNON, SIGNON, or COMMANDS tables, or in the IMSID options.

- You must define access profiles to the RACF class(es) that you have created. The process of creating the access profiles requires that you analyze your security needs related to each IMS command and that you issue the appropriate RACF command to create each profile.

  **Note**

  To assist you in determining your profile requirements, ETA displays a list of all possible profiles when you generate a Command Processing Table report.

- The following considerations apply to implementing Enhanced Command Security for AOI DL/I ICMD calls:

  —If you implement Enhanced Command Security for AOI DL/I ICMD calls, the **AOIS** parameter in DFSPBxxx must specify C or A.

  —If you request a TSS table lookup to find the user ID to use for AOI ICMD calls, the PSB name will be used as the argument for the TSS table. If you request that ETA defaults be used rather than a TSS table lookup, and you want the PSB name to be used as the Enhanced Command Security user ID, specify
#PSBNAME as the user ID on the Command Security Options – ETA Defaults panel.

— Enhanced Command Security treats all transactions alike, regardless of which AOI keyword value is used on the TRANSACT macro.

— Enhanced Command Security is not available for AOI DL/I CMD calls.

- If you want to activate Enhanced Command Security for MCS and E/MCS consoles, the CMDMCS parameter in DFSPBxxx must specify C or B.

- If your data center uses a DFSCCMD0 exit which rejects a command, ETA Enhanced Command Security is bypassed, and the command is rejected. If your DFSCCMD0 exit accepts the command, ETA Enhanced Command Security is processed, and may reject the command.

- If your data center uses RACF or ACF2 to protect IMS commands (DFSPB xxx specifies or implies that RCF=C or S), the security you specify through ETA Enhanced Command Security will override the security that you have specified through RACF or ACF2. The following example illustrates how RACF (or ACF2) and ETA Enhanced Command Security interact:

  If RACF is defined to prevent a user from issuing a command and ETA Enhanced Command Security is defined to allow the user to issue the command, an IMS/RACF security violation message will be issued to the IMS Master Terminal and to the MVS system log. However, the command will be allowed since ETA Enhanced Command Security allows the command. The IMS/RACF checking is done before the ETA checking, and IMS/RACF issues the violation message at that point.

- Review the default settings on the Command Processing Table panel. Access this table from the main menu of the ETA ISPF interface by selecting option 7 (Administration functions), option 6 (Command Security Options).

  If the default settings on the Command Processing Table panel address your security requirements, you do not need to take further action. If the default settings need to be tailored to meet your needs, create a new Command Processing table and modify the settings. See “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317 for instructions on creating a Command Processing table.

**ETA Defaults**

ETA Defaults allow you to activate or specify the following options:

- Specify a command protection class name

- Specify a Command Processing table suffix
Specify the command security user ID when one has not been provided through ETA Autosignon or Signon and RACF Signon has not been performed.

Specify any of the following environments for processing:

- Dynamic terminals
- Static terminals
- Time-controlled operations (TCO)
- IMS WTOR
- IMS Master Terminal
- AOI DL/I ICMD calls
- MCS/EMCS console
- Operations Manager

Suppress ETA security violation messages to the MVS log or the IMS master terminal.

Return IMS user message to terminal instead of the BMC Software user message.

Specify command rejection processing:

- Reject the command
- Use the previous RACF return code if available

**TSS Options**

Specify TSS-driven options for command security processing:

- Specify one of the following search arguments for dynamic and static terminals:
  - Node name
  - LTERM name
  - USER name for dynamic and LTERM name for static terminals

- Specify Command Security TSS table name

- Specify command security processing when the TSS translate is unsuccessful
Task Instruction for Enhanced Command Security Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting enhanced command security options:

- “Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—ETA Defaults” on page 153
- “Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—TSS Options” on page 157

Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—ETA Defaults

The ETA Defaults allow you to specify the options that ETA will use to secure IMS commands.

Figure 37: Panel Flow – Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—ETA Defaults

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

You must have defined the RACF class(es) that Enhanced Command Security requires. See “Considerations and Restrictions” on page 150 and “Enhanced Command Security Options” on page 147 for information on defining the RACF class(es).
To Specify Enhanced Command Security Options—ETA Defaults

1 Go to the Command Security Options – ETA Defaults panel.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 12 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Command Security Options panel is displayed.

   d From the IMSID Options - Command Security Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Command Security Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2 Specify the options that Enhanced Command Security will use to secure IMS commands.

   a Specify the RACF resource class name that will be used to define individual access profiles in the RACF resource class name field.

      Note
      This class must first be defined to RACF in the Class Descriptor table through the ICHERCDE macro. This class cannot be the same class as any active class specified on the RCLASS parameter of the SECURITY macro in the IMS sysgen. For example, if RCLASS=IMS is specified, this class cannot be CIMS, DIMS, and so forth. An IMS user abend code 0166 may occur if a duplicate class is used.

   b If you have created a modified ETA Command Processing table, specify the one- to three-character suffix for the table, ETAZ1 xxx, in the Command table suffix field.

      If you do not specify a table suffix, the default ETA Command Processing table, ETALICM0, will be used.

   c Specify how ETA should select the command security user ID when one has not been provided through ETA Autosignon or ETA Signon and when RACF Signon has not been performed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Specify which environments Enhanced Command Security will process.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to activate processing for commands entered from...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic terminals</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>Dynamic terminals</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static (sysgened) terminals</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>Static terminals</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS Time-Controlled-Operations (TCO)</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>Time-controlled-Operations (TCO)</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The IMS WTOR</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>IMS WTOR</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The IMS Master Terminal</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>IMS Master terminal</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programs issuing AOI DL/I ICMD calls</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>AOI DL/I ICMD calls</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you implement Enhanced Command Security for AOI DL/I ICMD calls, the <code>A0IS</code> parameter in DFSPBxxx must specify <code>C</code> or <code>A</code>. If you request a TSS table lookup to find the user ID to use for AOI ICMD calls, the PSB name will be used as the argument for the TSS table. If you request that ETA defaults be used rather than a TSS table lookup, and you want the PSB name to be used as the Enhanced Command Security user ID, specify <code>#PSBNAME</code> as the user ID on the Command Security Options – ETA Defaults panel. Enhanced Command Security treats all transactions alike, regardless of which AOI keyword value is used on the TRANSACT macro. Enhanced Command Security is not available for AOI DL/I CMD calls.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An MCS or EMCS console</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>MCS/EMCS console</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations Manager (OM) via the single point of control (SPOC) interface</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the <strong>Operations Manager</strong> field. Type a user ID in the optional associated <strong>Userid</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The user ID associated with each input source will be used only if all the following conditions apply: a user ID has not been specified through ETA Autosignon or ETA Signon, RACF Signon has not been performed, and a user ID has not been provided through ETA COMMANDS TSS table processing. For the following environments, the ETA default user ID is always used and the ETA COMMANDS TSS table is not used:

- IMS Time-Controlled-Operations (TCO)
- IMS WTOR
- IMS Master Terminal
- An MCS or EMCS console
- Operations Manager (OM)

4 Specify the actions to be taken when a user is not authorized to enter a command as defined by Enhanced Command Security access profiles.

a Specify how Enhanced Command Security will process error messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Issue the BCM5320 message to the MVS log</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the Send violation messages to OS console field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue the BM C5320 message to the IMS Master Terminal</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the Send violation messages to IMS MTO field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send a user-defined message to the terminal instead of the BCM5214 message</td>
<td>a slash (/) in the Return IMS user message... field and type the negative of the associated user message number in the User message number field. Leave this field blank to return the BCM5214 message to the inputting terminal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Before this option will function, you must build the User Message table, DFSCMTU0, for your IMS system. See the IMS Customization Guide for information on User Message tables.

b Specify the action ETA will take when Enhanced Command Security rejects a command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reject the command</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the return code from RACF (if available) or use default IMS command security if RACF are not available</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5  Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6  Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create or update a Command Processing table (ETAZ1xxx)</td>
<td>See “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table provide customization information, the TSS table must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—TSS Options**

The ETA TSS options allow you to use a TSS table to specify all options available through the ETA online interface. The Command Security – TSS Options panel allows you to specify the search argument for dynamic and static terminals and to specify processing options.

**Figure 38: Panel Flow – Specifying Enhanced Command Security Options—TSS**
**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Specify Enhanced Command Security—TSS Options**

1. Go to the Command Security Options – TSS Options panel.
   
a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 12 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options - Command Security Options panel is displayed.

   d. From the IMSID Options - Command Security Options panel, type 2 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Command Security Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

2. Specify the TSS table processing options for dynamic and static terminals, and the action to be taken when the TSS translate is unsuccessful.

   a. Specify the TSS search argument for dynamic and static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Node name associated with the inputting terminal</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM name associated with the inputting terminal</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER (SPQB) name associated with a dynamic inputting terminal or LTERM name associated with a static inputting terminal</td>
<td>3 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. Specify a valid ETA COMMANDS TSS table name in the **Command Security TSS table name** field.

   c. Specify the action that ETA should take when the search of the ETA COMMANDS TSS table is unsuccessful.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>If you want to...</strong></th>
<th><strong>Then type...</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the default command security user ID if specified</td>
<td><strong>1</strong> in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject the command</td>
<td><strong>2</strong> in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

If you want to implement your customizations, then refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

If you have specified that a TSS table provide customization information, the TSS table must exist before you perform the refresh.

**Timer Driven Options**

Timer driven options allow you to specify when the execution of ETA statistics gathering and scan option functions can occur.

**Specifying the Timer Driven Options**

Use the Timer Driven Options panel to specify time intervals for ETA statistics gathering and scan option functions.

**Figure 39: Panel Flow – Specifying the Timer Driven Options**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.
## To Specify the Timer Driven Options

1. Go to the IMSID Options – Timer Driven Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 13 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Timer Driven Options panel is displayed.

2. Specify one or more of the following terminal and user statistics and scan intervals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| the time interval when ETA will collect and calculate specific IMS statistics              | type a slash (/) in the Gather statistics interval field and the number of minutes in the minutes field. The following statistics are monitored:  
  - Number of dynamic terminals in use  
  - Number of dynamic users  
  - Number of logons  
  - Number of signons  
  - Number of autosignoffs  
  - Number of autosignons  
  - Number of autologons  
  - Number of held conversations exited  
  - Number of active conversations exited  
  - Number of DEADQ users dequeued  
  The statistics gathered can be viewed with the /DIS ETA STATUS command. See “/DISplay ETA STATUS” on page 274. |
<p>| the time interval when ETA will scan IMS for inactive conversations that fall into one of the scan option categories | type a slash (/) in the Scan inactive conversations interval field and the number of minutes in the minutes field. |
| the time interval when ETA will exit held conversations that are assigned to a user (not a terminal) and that have been inactive for more than the time specified in the minutes field | type a slash (/) in the /EXIT held conversations when inactive for field and the number of minutes in the minutes field. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to specify...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the time interval when ETA will exit non-held conversations that are assigned to a</td>
<td>type a slash (/) in the /EXIT non-held conversations when inactive for field and the number of minutes in the minutes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user (not a terminal) and that have been inactive for more than the time specified in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the minutes field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the number of DEADQ users to dequeue automatically at IMS checkpoint time</td>
<td>type a slash (/) in the Automatic /DEQ DEADQ users at checkpoint field and the number of users in the users field. No DEADQ users will be dequeued in a Shared Queues environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Press F3 four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

4 Repeat this task as needed for other IMSIDs.

Where to go from here

If you want to implement your customizations, then refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

**DFS2467I Message Replacement Options**

The ETA online interface allows you to specify DFS2467I replacement options for static terminals that have completed autosignon processing or bypassed signon processing. ETA allows you to choose, by terminal type, the following screen format or messages as a replacement for the standard DFS2467I message:

- User format
- User message (with user format, if supplied)
- User-defined ETA Greetings Message exit

You must include at least one of the following text options in the replacement for the DFS2467I message:

- Error return code
- Error message text

The replacement you choose will be used when IMS would normally issue the DFS2467I message.
Replacing the DFS2467I Message by Terminal Type

ETA allows you to replace the DFS2467I message with system-wide replacements for static terminals.

**Figure 40: Panel Flow – Replacing the DFS2467I Message by Terminal Type**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Replace the DFS2467I Message by Terminal Type**

1. Go to the IMSID Options – DFS2467I Message Options panel.
   
a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   
b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   
c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 14 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID Options - DFS2467I Message Options panel is displayed.

2. In the **Method** selection field, indicate the DFS2467I message replacement options you want to use for static terminals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A customer-modified Greetings Message exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Choose replacements for the DFS2467I message by terminal type.

   a. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to a terminal type to access a DFS2467I Message Options - Terminal Type pop-up window and edit the DFS2467I Message options for the selected type of terminals.
b Use the selection fields under the headings *Static terminal message replacement option* to specify the replacement you want performed for static terminals of this type. If you do not specify a replacement, the DFS2467I message will be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to replace the DFS2467I message with...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A user format only</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and type the user format in the <em>Static terminal user format name</em> field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A user message with a user format, if supplied</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and type the user format in the <em>Static terminal user format name</em> field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Include one or both of the following message text options in the replacement for the DFS2467I message:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to include the...</th>
<th>Then type a slash (/) in the...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Error return code</td>
<td>Include error return code field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error message text</td>
<td>Include error message text field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note*

You must include at least one selection.

If you choose option 2, user message (with user format, if supplied), you can customize the text for DFS2467I. To customize the message text associated with the variable signon return code supplied by the DFS2467I message, see “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311.

d Press F3.

e Repeat Step 3 on page 162 for each terminal type used on the IMS system.

4 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a user format</td>
<td>Use the MFS language utility to create the format. See IBM publication <em>IMS/ESA Application Programming: Transaction Manager</em> for information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Non-discardable Message Options

The ETA non-discardable message feature allows you to specify how non-discardable messages and IMS transactions are processed. It also allows you to activate the TSS options for the processing of non-discardable messages.

#### Task Instructions for Non-discardable Message Options

See the following sections for instructions on setting non-discardable message options:

- **“Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—ETA Defaults”** on page 164
- **“Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options”** on page 167

#### Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—ETA Defaults

Use the Non-discardable Message Options – ETA Defaults panel to select whether ETA should use the ETA defaults, a TSS table, or a user exit to determine how to process non-discardable messages. Also use this panel to define IMS transaction processing.
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify Non-discardable Message Options—ETA Defaults

1. Go to the Non-discardable Message Options – ETA Defaults panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 15 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options – Non-discardable Message Options panel is displayed.
   d. From the IMSID Options – Non-discardable Message Options panel, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Non-discardable Message Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

2. In the Method selection field, indicate how you want ETA to specify non-discardable message options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA Defaults</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to use... | Then type...
---|---
A customer-modified exit | 3 in the option selection field

3 In the **Default processing** selection field, indicate the ETA default for processing non-discardable messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ETA to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apply normal IMS processing to the message</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discard the message from the message queues</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place the message on the transaction's suspend queue</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requeue the message to the original IMS transaction</td>
<td>4 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requeue the message to a new transaction</td>
<td>5 in the option selection field and the new transaction in the new transaction code field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 **Transaction pseudo abend option**—Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field if you never want pseudo abends to be processed. If you do want pseudo abends to be processed, leave this field blank.

5 **Do not USTOP transaction**—Activate or deactivate this option to indicate whether to stop an IMS transaction or to leave it started (not stopped). If *activated*, the IMS transaction is not stopped. If *deactivated*, the IMS transaction is stopped. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

**WARNING**
Selecting this option can cause the MTO to be flooded with messages in the following situations:

- The Default processing option for a non-serial transaction is 4 Requeue, and processing causes that transaction to acquire USTOP status.

- The Default processing option for a serial transaction is 1 IMS, 3 Suspend, or 4 Requeue, and processing causes that transaction to acquire USTOP status.

6 **Do not send DFS555I**—Activate or deactivate this option to indicate whether to issue the DFS555I message. If *activated*, the DFS555I message is not issued. If *deactivated*, the DFS555I message is issued. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.

7 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

8 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.
Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify signoff options through the TSS Options</td>
<td>See “Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options” on page 1672 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an ETA user exit that takes advantage of ETA features</td>
<td>See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make an ETA user exit available to an IMS system</td>
<td>See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Non-discardable Message exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options

Use the Non-discardable Message Options – TSS Options panel to activate the TSS options for the processing of non-discardable messages.

Figure 42: Panel Flow – Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.
To Specify Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options

1. Go to the Non-discardable Message Options – TSS Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 15 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - Non-discardable Message Options panel is displayed.
   d. From the IMSID Options - Non-discardable Message Options panel, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Non-discardable Message Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

2. Use the field under the heading TSS argument option to specify the non-discardable message processing TSS argument.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use the...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transaction code</td>
<td>1 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSB name</td>
<td>2 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Userid</td>
<td>3 in the option selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
You must specify a TSS table name in the corresponding field if a selection is specified.

3. Specify the name of the NONDISC TSS table you want to use to determine non-discardable message processing options in the NONDISC TSS table name field.

If you have not yet created this NONDISC TSS table, record the name for later use when creating the table.

4. Specify the action that ETA should take when the search of the ETA NONDISC TSS table is unsuccessful.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal IMS processing</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA defaults</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Press **F3** four times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

6 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables that specify signoff options</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175. Use the table names you recorded in Step 3 on page 168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify default options that will be used if a TSS table search fails</td>
<td>See “Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—ETA Defaults” on page 164 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options or TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions. If you have specified that a TSS table or ETA Non-discardable Message exit provide customization information, the TSS table or exit must exist before you perform the refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMS Initialization Options**

IMS initialization options allow you to specify the following options:

- IMS password reverification
- Alternate ALOT=0 processing
- VTAM Generic Resource processing
- Resource sharing for ISC in Resource Manager
- SLU3 logon processing

**Specifying the IMS Initialization Options**

Use the IMSID Options – IMS Initialization Options panel to select options that can also be defined by the IMS initialization exit, DFSINTX0.
Numeric options selected on this panel override any exit selections and take effect when they are refreshed in IMS. However, typing a blank over a prior numeric setting on this panel will return that option to the exit-specified or the default DFSINTX0 value at IMS restart only. To avoid a restart, refresh IMS with the opposite numeric setting before typing a blank for that field.

Figure 43: Panel Flow – Specifying the IMS Initialization Options

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Specify the IMS Initialization Options

1. Go to the IMSID Options – IMS Initialization Options panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
   c. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type 16 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID Options - IMS Initialization Options panel is displayed.

2. Use the field under the heading IMS password reverification to specify whether ETA should prompt users who have changed their passwords and are signing on to VTAM terminals to verify the new password.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to ETA to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prompt users</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT prompt users (IMS default)</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. If enabled, bypass IMS password reverification for STSN devices—Activate or deactivate this option if you selected option 1 in the IMS password reverification field. This option ensures password reverification is NOT enforced for STSN devices. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to this field to indicate use of this option; otherwise, leave this field blank.
4 Use the field under the heading **Alternate ALOT=0 processing** to determine alternate ALOT=0 processing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want ALOT=0 processing to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disconnect the terminal only after ASOT is reached</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnect the terminal immediately unless signon data is passed during logon (IMS default)</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Use the field under the heading **VTAM Generic Resource processing** to enable or disable VTAM Generic Resource (VGR) processing for ISC devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable VGR processing (IMS default)</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable VGR processing</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Use the field under the heading **Resource sharing for ISC** in **Resource Manager** to enable or disable resource sharing for static ISC terminals using the resource manager (RM) address space. If activated, enforcement will not be done for name uniqueness or resource type consistency for static ISC resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable resource sharing for static ISC terminals using the resource manager (RM) address space (IMS default)</td>
<td>1 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable resource sharing for static ISC terminals using the resource manager (RM) address space</td>
<td>2 in the selection field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Use the fields under the heading **SLU3 logon processing** to enable or disable SLU3 logon processing. You can enable SLU3 printers to log on as either SLU1 or 3270 devices, but not both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable SLU3 printers to log on as SLU1 devices</td>
<td>1 in the <em>first</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify that SLU3 printers cannot log on as SLU1 devices (IMS default)</td>
<td>2 in the <em>first</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable SLU3 printers to log on as 3270 devices</td>
<td>1 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify that SLU3 printers cannot log on as 3270 devices (IMS default)</td>
<td>2 in the <em>second</em> selection field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explicitly disable both types of SLU3 logon processing</td>
<td>2 in both the <em>first</em> and <em>second</em> selection fields</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8 Press F3 three times to return to the ETA Main Menu.

9 Repeat this task as needed for other IMSIDs.

**Where to go from here**

If you want to implement your customizations, then refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.

**ETA Refresh Facilities**

The IMSID option refresh and TSS refresh facilities are available from the Refresh Menu.

The IMSID Options refresh updates the ETA options in use in an IMS Control Region. The TSS refresh updates the TSS table data in use in an IMS system by purging all data from the TSS cache buffers. ETA reloads the data as your TSS tables are accessed. This process allows you to make changes to TSS tables immediately available for use. The TSS refresh is only effective if you use cache buffering for access to TSS table data and if you have specified that ETA use five or more TSS cache buffers.

**Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs**

After you have modified IMS customization information through the ETA IMSID options panels, data in one or more TSS tables, or a CPU ID, you must update the information in the IMS control region for those changes to take effect. The refresh options on the Refresh Menu allow you to perform this update.

**Figure 44: Panel Flow – Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or refresh data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To use the TSS refresh feature, you must have previously created or modified one or more TSS tables and specified five or more TSS cache buffers.

To Refresh IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Refresh Menu is displayed.

2. Verify or change the Target.

   To change the Target, type the new IMSID or Group name in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter.

   If you use XRF, ETA automatically creates two IMSID options modules when you save your IMSID options: the primary IMSID options module and the XRF alternate IMSID options module. ETA creates these modules automatically to ensure that the modules are always synchronized.

   **WARNING**
   Never refresh the IMSID options for your XRF alternate IMS system by specifying the XRF alternate IMSID options module. When you refresh the primary IMS system, the XRF alternate IMS system will be refreshed automatically with the alternate IMSID options module.

3. Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refresh IMSID options</td>
<td>1 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh TSS tables</td>
<td>2 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh BMC CPU-ID</td>
<td>3 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   After a refresh attempt, ETA issues a message that indicates whether the refresh was successful. See the ETA online message help for additional information on ETA messages.

4. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs or to refresh other items as required.
Where to go from here

Perform other customizations as needed.
Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature

This chapter describes the Translate Subsystem Services (TSS) feature that is available with EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA), and also provides instructions for using the utility features that are available through the ETA online interface to create and maintain TSS data sets and tables.

ETA also provides batch commands that you can use to create and maintain TSS data sets and tables. See “Batch Features and ETA Macros” on page 411 for information.

Introduction to TSS

TSS is a generalized table-lookup system that searches TSS tables for user-specified IMS system customization information.

ETA provides information from TSS tables to IMS for the creation of dynamic terminals, printers, and LTERMs. To use the TSS feature, you must create a TSS data set, create one or more TSS tables within the data set, and activate the TSS feature through IMSID options in the ETA online interface.

TSS Data Sets

The TSS data set is a fixed-length BDAM data set with equal LRECL and BLKSIZE. There is no required LRECL or BLKSIZE; however, BMC Software recommends a minimum LRECL and BLKSIZE of 4096 bytes. The RECFM for a TSS data set must be FS, and the organization must be PS.

See “Batch Features and ETA Macros” on page 411 for information on using JCL to create TSS data sets.
TSS subroutines that are resident in the IMS control region access the TSS data set. No interregion communication is required.

Consider the following when you are using and maintaining TSS data sets:

- You can only use one TSS data set at a time within any IMS control region.
- Use the backup utility in the ETA online interface or IEBGENER to back up the TSS data set.
- You must protect the TSS data set from unauthorized updates.
- Because the TSS data set can be updated from any authorized ETA session, you must use GRS or an equivalent utility to protect the TSS data set from multiple concurrent updates.
- You should not perform data compression on the TSS data set.
- Because the IMS control region uses the TSS data set, the DASD that you use to store the data set is critical to IMS performance. Treat the TSS data set as you would any other IMS system data set, such as long and short message queue data sets.

**Task Instructions for TSS Data Sets**

The following sections provide instructions on working with TSS data sets:

- “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176
- “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use” on page 179
- “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use” on page 181
- “Checking the Status of a TSS Data Set” on page 184
- “Backing Up a TSS Data Set” on page 187
- “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224

**Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set**

Before you can create TSS tables to store customization information for an IMS system, you must allocate and format a data set that will contain the tables.
You can use the Format TSS Data Set pop-up window to format an existing data set or to allocate and format a new data set for use with the ETA TSS feature. The Format TSS Data Set pop-up window is available from the ETA Translate Sub-System panel.

**Figure 45: Panel Flow - Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set**

![Diagram of panel flow](image)

**Before you begin**

Data sets that are allocated using the following instructions have an LRECL and BLKSIZE of 4096 bytes. If this is unacceptable at your facility, use the JCL in ETACNTL member ETA#TSSA to allocate the TSS data set with a different LRECL and BLKSIZE. See “Batch Features and ETA Macros” on page 411 for information.

**To Allocate and Format a TSS Data Set**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS data set information and go to the Format TSS Data Set pop-up window.
   
   a. Type **10** in the **Selection** field.
   
   b. Type the name of the TSS data set that you want to allocate (if necessary) and format in the **TSS table data set** field.
   
   c. Press **Enter**. The Format TSS Data Set pop-up window is displayed.

3. Specify data set and space information. (You cannot use the Format TSS Data Set pop-up window to change an existing data set’s attributes.)
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Format an existing data set for use by TSS | Go to List item. on page 178.
Specify attributes for a new data set and format it for use by TSS | Go to Step 3.a on page 178.

a  Allocate the data set.

| If you want to allocate the data set via... | Then... |
---|---|
Non-SMS allocation parameters | Type a VOLSER in the Volume serial field and type a unit name in the Unit name field. Leave the SMS Storage class and SMS Management class fields blank. |
SMS allocation parameters | Type an SMS storage class in the SMS Storage class field. Type an SMS management class in the SMS Management class field if your facility requires this parameter for SMS configuration; otherwise, leave this field blank. Leave the Volume serial and Unit name fields blank. |

**Note**
The VOLSER and unit name are mutually exclusive with the SMS parameters.

b  Use the Units and Quantity fields to specify the amount of DASD that you want to allocate for the data set.

c  Press Enter. ETA prompts you to verify the data.

d  Accept or change the data set attributes.

| If the attributes are... | Then... |
---|---|
Correct | Press Enter. |
Incorrect | Change the attributes and press Enter. |

The ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages are displayed.

4  Repeat Step 2 on page 177 and Step 3 on page 177 for other TSS data sets as required.

5  Repeat this task for other IMSIDs as required.

6  Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.
Where to go from here

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate the TSS feature</td>
<td>See “Specifying Information for the TSS Feature” on page 49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create TSS tables</td>
<td>See “Defining a TSS Table” on page 205.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use

When you delete TSS tables from a TSS data set and delete TSS table entries from TSS tables, the space that those tables and table entries occupied is not available for use until you reorganize the data set.

The Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window allows you to reclaim space in a TSS data set. This task describes how to reorganize a TSS data set that is *not* being used by the IMS control region(s).

**Figure 46: Panel Flow - Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use**

Before you begin

Bring down any IMS systems that use the TSS data set to ensure that the TSS data set is *not* in use by any IMS control region.
To Reorganize a TSS Data Set While Not in Use

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS data set information and go to the Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the Table name field.
   
   a. Type 11 in the Selection field.
   
   b. Type the name of the TSS data set that you want to reorganize in the TSS table data set field.
   
   c. Verify or change the data set disposition. To change the disposition, type the new value in the Disposition field.
   
   d. Press Enter. The Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window is displayed.

3. Verify or change the attributes for the output data set that ETA will use during the reorganization, then start the reorganization.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An existing, sequential data set</td>
<td>Type the data set name in the Data set name field, type OLD in the Disposition status field, and press Enter. Go to Step 3.c on page 181.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new data set</td>
<td>Go to List item. on page 180.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Verify or change the following attributes:

   ■ Data set name—the default is &UNLOAD
   
   ■ Disposition status—the default is NEW
   
   ■ Non-SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with SMS allocation parameters):
     
     — Volume serial
     
     — Unit name
   
   ■ SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with non-SMS allocation parameters):
     
     — SMS Storage class
     
     — SMS Management class
- New Space quantity
  
  To change an attribute, type the new value in the appropriate field. See the ETA online help for detailed information about each of the fields.

b Press Enter. ETA prompts you to verify the data set attributes.

c Accept or change the data set attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the attributes are...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages are displayed.

4 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If you want to implement your changes, you must restart the IMS system(s).

Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use

When you delete TSS tables from a TSS data set and delete TSS table entries from TSS tables, the space that those tables and table entries occupied is not available for use until you reorganize the data set. The Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window allows you to reclaim space in a TSS data set. This task describes how to reorganize a TSS data set that is being used by the IMS control region(s).

Figure 47: Panel Flow – Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use
**Before you begin**

*Exercise caution* when you use the `/CHAnge TSS UNALLOC` command. When you issue this command, the control region dynamically unallocates the TSS data set. If any TSS activity is required, an attempt is made to retrieve the requested data from the TSS buffers that are contained in memory. If the TSS buffers do *NOT* contain the data, the request will fail. If you *DO NOT* use TSS lookaside buffers (IMSID option 2 Translate Sub-system options, Number of cache buffers field on the TSS Options pop-up window), the TSS lookup request will fail. A typical request could be any TSS activity that is required by LOGON, SIGNON/AUTOSIGNON, UNSOLICITED OUTPUT, RCNT, LOGOFF, SIGNOFF, NONDISC, COMMAND, TRANSACT, DFS3649/DFS3650 MESSAGE REPLACEMENT processes.

If you issue ETA commands `/DIS TSSTABLE` or `/ASS LTERM *lterm_name* EUO` while the TSS data set is unallocated, you will most likely receive message BMC5219 - COMMAND FAILED, TSS DATASET UNALLOCATED. If *all required data* is in the TSS buffers, then the command will execute successfully.

---

**Note**

BMC Software recommends that you use this procedure during off-hours to lessen possible impact to the IMS system. Contact BMC Software Customer Support for assistance if you require this procedure during peak IMS usage.

---

**To Reorganize a TSS Data Set While in Use**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS data set information and go to the Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the Table name field.
   
   a. Type 11 in the Selection field.

   b. Type the name of the TSS data set that you want to reorganize in the TSS table data set field.

   c. Verify or change the data set disposition. To change the disposition, type the new value in the Disposition field.

   d. Press Enter. The Reorganize TSS Data Set pop-up window is displayed.

3. Enter the following ETA-enhanced IMS command to unallocate the TSS data set from the IMS control region(s):

   `/CHAnge TSS UNALLOC`
4 Verify or change the attributes for the output data set that ETA will use during the reorganization, then start the reorganization.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An existing, sequential data set</td>
<td>Type the data set name in the <strong>Data set name</strong> field, type <strong>OLD</strong> in the <strong>Disposition status</strong> field, and press <strong>Enter</strong>. Go to <strong>Step 4.c on page 183</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new data set</td>
<td>Go to <strong>Step 4.a on page 183</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a** Verify or change the following attributes:

- Data set name—the default is &UNLOAD
- Disposition status—the default is NEW
- Non-SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with SMS allocation parameters):
  - Volume serial
  - Unit name
- SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with non-SMS allocation parameters):
  - SMS Storage class
  - SMS Management class
- New Space quantity
  To change an attribute, type the new value in the appropriate field. See the ETA online help for detailed information about each of the fields.

**b** Press **Enter**. ETA prompts you to verify the data set attributes.

**c** Accept or change the data set attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the attributes are...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages are displayed.
5 You must unallocate the TSS data set from the TSO session that was used to perform the TSS reorganization function in the prior step.

Either log off from the TSO session or issue the TSO FREE command before you reallocate the TSS data set to the IMS control region in Step 6 on page 184.

6 Enter the following ETA-enhanced IMS command to allocate the TSS data set to the IMS control region:

/CHAnge TSS ALLOC

7 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If you want to implement your changes, you must restart the IMS system(s).

Checking the Status of a TSS Data Set

You can create a summary or detailed report that provides information about a TSS data set.

Figure 48: Panel Flow – Checking the Status of a TSS Data Set

Before you begin

You must have created and formatted a TSS data set and defined at least one TSS table.
To Check the Status of a TSS Data Set

1 Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2 Specify basic TSS data set information and to go to the Data Set Status pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the Table name field.

   a Type 13 in the Selection field.

   b Type the name of the TSS data set that you want to check in the TSS table data set field.

   c Verify or change the data set disposition. To change the disposition, type the new value in the Disposition field.

   d Press Enter. The Data Set Status pop-up window is displayed.

3 Verify or change the attributes for the data set that will contain the report, then start the report generation process.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to use...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An existing, sequential data set</td>
<td>Type the data set name in the Data set name field and type OLD in the Disposition Status field. Go to Step 3.c on page 186.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new data set</td>
<td>Go to Step 3.a on page 185.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Verify or change the data set name in the Data set name field. The default value is &REPORT. This value will create a temporary data set.

To specify an existing data set or create a permanent data set, type the data set name in the Data set name field.

b Verify, change, or specify the following attributes:

- Disposition status—the default is NEW

- Non-SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with SMS allocation parameters):
  - Volume serial
  - Unit name—the default is SYSALLDA

- SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with non-SMS allocation parameters):
—SMS Storage class
—SMS Management class

■ New Space quantity—the default is 2 tracks

To change or specify an attribute, type the new value in the appropriate field. See the ETA online help for detailed information about each of the fields.

c Indicate the type of report that ETA should generate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want a...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary report</td>
<td>1 in the Type of report field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed report</td>
<td>2 in the Type of report field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d Press Enter. ETA prompts you to verify the data set attributes.

e Accept or change the data set attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the attributes are...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The status report is displayed.

4 Press F3 when you have finished reviewing the status report. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

5 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the report indicates that the TSS data set...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Should be reorganized</td>
<td>See “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use” on page 179 or “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use” on page 181.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contains a TSS table that has been damaged</td>
<td>See “Repairing a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates” on page 225.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Back up a TSS Data Set

Use the following instructions to create a backup copy of a TSS data set.

**Figure 49: Panel Flow – Backing Up a TSS Data Set**

**Before you begin**

You must have created and formatted a TSS data set and you must have at least one TSS table within that data set.

Verify the attributes of the TSS data set that you want to back up so that you can correctly specify DASD and other attributes of the backup data set.

**To Back Up a TSS Data Set**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS data set information and to go to the Backup TSS Data Set pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the **Table name** field.

   a. Type 9 in the **Selection** field.

   b. Type the name of the TSS data set that you want to back up in the **TSS table data set** field.

   c. Verify or change the data set disposition. To change the disposition, type the new value in the **Disposition** field.

   d. Press **Enter**. The Backup TSS Data Set pop-up window is displayed.

3. Verify or change attributes for the output data set, then start the backup.
If you want to use... | Then type...
---|---
An existing, sequential data set | The data set name in the **Data set name** field and type **OLD** in the **Disposition status** field. Go to Step 3.b on page 188.
A new data set | The data set name in the **Data set name** field and type **NEW** in the **Disposition status** field. Go to Step 3.a on page 188.

a Verify, change, or specify the following attributes:

- Data set name
- Disposition status—the default is **NEW**
- Non-SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with SMS allocation parameters):
  - Volume serial
  - Unit name
- SMS allocation parameters (mutually exclusive with non-SMS allocation parameters):
  - SMS Storage class
  - SMS Management class
- New Space quantity
  To change or specify an attribute, type the new value in the appropriate field. See the ETA online help for detailed information about each of the fields.

b Press **Enter**. ETA prompts you to verify the data set attributes.

c Accept or change the data set attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the attributes are...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages are displayed.

4 Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.
TSS Tables

TSS tables are two-column tables that contain a search argument and a result.

The argument is typically a node name, a user ID, or a terminal type. The result provides customization information that you specify. When ETA queries the TSS tables, it searches for the argument; if ETA finds the argument, it returns the corresponding result. Thirteen TSS table types give you the flexibility to control and selectively implement all available IMS and ETA options.

You can set the length of the argument and result columns between 1 and 256 bytes. Although the number of columns is fixed, you can create as many as 999,999 rows.

You can define and maintain TSS tables through the ETA online interface or through TSS batch commands that you can issue at the TSO READY prompt or in batch routines. See “TSS Batch Processing Execution” on page 432 for more information about creating and maintaining TSS tables in batch.

TSS Access Methods in an IMS Control Region

ETA provides two methods of accessing TSS tables:

- Direct access to the TSS data set
  Direct access to TSS tables ensures that changes to TSS table data are immediately available to the system.

- Cache buffering in the IMS control region
  Cache buffering allows faster access to TSS tables. In this method, a pool of the most recently referenced blocks is retained in extended private storage of the IMS control region. You can specify the number of these cache buffers on the TSS Options panel that is available in the ETA IMSID Options. This method provides faster access to the TSS tables than reading the TSS data set for each request. Depending on the number of cache buffers that you have allocated in the IMS control region and the size of the TSS tables, changes made to tables may not be available to the IMS control region until you flush the buffers by performing a TSS refresh.

TSS Search Methods

ETA can search TSS tables in two ways: through a binary search or through a sequential search. When you create a TSS table, you can specify which of these methods will be used during TSS processing. You can also change the search method in TSS edit.
The default method performs a binary search of the TSS data set to find the appropriate TSS table and the requested argument. ETA can also perform a sequential search that allows pattern masking. In TSS tables that can be accessed by the sequential search method, you can use asterisks (*) as wildcard characters in TSS arguments and results.

**Wildcard Masking**

In tables that allow wildcard masking, arguments and results that use asterisks are called *patterns*.

The wildcard character can be placed in the leading, middle, or trailing position. In the trailing position, the character will pad to the maximum length of the value, but leading and middle positions must have an asterisk for each character that is considered to be wild. The following table shows pattern-masking samples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample masking pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible matches from a TSS search</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLU*</td>
<td>All SLU-type devices</td>
<td>SLU1, SLU2, SLU225, SLUP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLU2*5</td>
<td>All SLU2 devices that have model 5 as the alternate screen size</td>
<td>SLU225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**XYZZ</td>
<td>All six-character node names that end with XYZZ</td>
<td>12XYZZ, ABXYZZ, 03XYZZ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you specify a wildcard character in a pattern type operand of a TSS command, *all character values* that are found in the TSS data set are considered to match the wildcard character’s position in the pattern. You can use pattern type operands only in certain situations.

**TSS Argument Propagation Feature**

If you type wildcard characters (*) in certain result fields of a TSS table entry, the argument value or the appropriate number of characters from the argument is propagated to that field.

If the argument of a TSS table entry that uses the Argument Propagation feature contains wildcard characters, these characters continue to function as wildcards. The following table shows sample TSS argument propagation.
### Table 3: Samples of TSS Argument Propagation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument specified in TSS table</th>
<th>Result field value specified in TSS table</th>
<th>Input for TSS table search</th>
<th>Output for field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABCDEFGH</td>
<td>L*</td>
<td>ABCDEFGH</td>
<td>LB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td>ABCDEFGH</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC*</td>
<td>USR*</td>
<td>ABCDEFGH</td>
<td>USRD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em><strong>3</strong></em>*</td>
<td>ABCDEFGH</td>
<td>ABC3EFGH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB***FGH</td>
<td>***PROF</td>
<td>AB123FGH</td>
<td>AB12PROF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The TSS Argument Propagation feature is supported for most TSS table type arguments. In the ETA online interface, field titles with a double underscore identify fields that support the feature. You can also see the descriptions of each TSS table type for information about which fields support the feature. See “Types of TSS Tables” on page 191 for the location of information about each TSS table type.

### Concurrent Updates of TSS Tables

TSS uses the enqueue qname SPFEDIT, which is the same qname that ISPF uses. Normally, this name will already be defined to Global Resource Serialization (GRS) or its equivalent for propagation to multiple CPUs. If updates from multiple CPUs are possible, ensure that SPFEDIT is defined.

See “Batch TSS Commands and Features” on page 416 for more information.

**WARNING**

In the absence of GRS or its equivalent, concurrent updates from multiple CPUs can occur, which will damage TSS tables. If you suspect that damage has occurred, see “Repairing a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates” on page 225.

### Types of TSS Tables

The following table lists the ETA features that support TSS and the location of more information.

**Table 4: ETA Features that Support TSS Tables**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>TSS Table Type</th>
<th>See...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autosignon</td>
<td>AUTOSIGN</td>
<td>“Autosignon Table” on page 195</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following pages provide information about the standard TSS tables that allow you to specify these system configurations. The information includes the table purpose, the standard BMC Software name for the table, and the arguments and result values that you can specify.

For more information, see the ETA online help or Batch Features and ETA Macros on page 411.

## Logon Table

Two table types allow you to specify logon options:

- **LOGONNOD** tables specify options by node name
- **LOGONTYP** tables specify options by terminal type or MODETBL name

You can use this type of TSS table to specify the following options:

- All options that are available through ETA basic features
- DFS3649A and DFS3650I usage or replacement options

Arguments must be 8 bytes. The default TSS syntax for specifying the terminal type in TSS table arguments is the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>TSS Table Type</th>
<th>See...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DFS3649A</td>
<td>DFS3649A</td>
<td>“DFS3649A Replacement Table” on page 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFS3650I</td>
<td>DFS3650I</td>
<td>“DFS3650I Replacement Table” on page 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSC remote LTERM</td>
<td>RCNT</td>
<td>“Remote LTERM Table” on page 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logon</td>
<td>LOGONNOD or LOGONTYP</td>
<td>“Logon Table” on page 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logoff</td>
<td>LOGOFF</td>
<td>“Logoff Table” on page 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signon</td>
<td>SIGNON</td>
<td>“Signon Table” on page 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signoff</td>
<td>SIGNOFF</td>
<td>“Signoff Table” on page 198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Unsolicited Output/Printers  | TRANSACT UNSOLOUT | “Unsolicited Output Tables - TRANSACT TSS and
                                                                 UNSOLOUT TSS types” on page 202               |
| Command Security             | COMMANDS       | “Command Security Table” on page 204            |
| Non-discardable message support | NONDISC      | “Non-Discardable Message TSS Table” on page 204 |
Table 5 on page 193 explains this syntax.

**Table 5: TSS Terminal Type Syntax**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>SLU1</td>
<td>Primary and alternate screen models can be specified as described below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>Screen models can not be specified for these terminal types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLUP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NTO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3286</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ISC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>Primary screen size for eligible terminal types</td>
<td>1 through 8</td>
<td>Standard VTAM screen model definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Alternate screen size for eligible terminal types</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Results must* be 76 bytes for LOGONNOD tables and 60 bytes for LOGONTYP tables. Results for both tables can specify the following data:

- ALOT override or elimination
- Allow/disallow logon
- ASOT override
- Model number (mutually exclusive with VTAM model number)
- Descriptor choice--first through fourth preference
- ETA default LOGON descriptor name
- DFS3649A option
- DFS3650I option
- LOGON descriptor name
- LTERM and USER names equal to the node name
LTERM name other than the node name or user ID (LOGONNOD only)

RNR support

Screen size (model) override

MFSTEST support

VTAM model number (mutually exclusive with model number)

USER name other than the node name or user ID (LOGONNOD only)

Both logon TSS table types support Argument Propagation for the following fields: LOGON descriptor name, and ETA default descriptor name. In addition, LOGONNOD TSS tables support Argument Propagation for the LTERM name and USER name fields. See “TSS Argument Propagation Feature” on page 190 for information.

Logoff Table

The LOGOFF table type allows you to specify all options that are available through ETA basic features.

Arguments must be 8 bytes. Arguments can be node names, terminal types, or MODETBL. If you allow pattern masking when you define the table, you can specify wildcard characters for any positions in an argument. Results must be 8 bytes.

Results can specify the following data:

- Exit conversations
- Remove Exclusive mode
- Remove Test mode
- Remove Preset mode
- Remove MFSTEST mode
- Remove Response mode
- Remove Fast Path Response mode
- /DEQUEUE messages from previous session
Autosignon Table

The AUTOSIGN table type allows you to specify the following options:

- All options that are available through ETA basic features
- DFS3649A and DFS3650I usage or replacement options

Arguments can be 8 to 12 bytes. For arguments longer than 8 bytes, ETA forces a sequential search, which can decrease search performance unintentionally if the table was defined for binary searches. Although sequential searches are normally specified to allow pattern masking, wildcard characters are not substituted in arguments or results in this situation and can cause signon failures.

Arguments can be node names or user IDs. If you allow pattern masking when you define the table, you can specify wildcard characters for any positions in an argument.

Results must be 188 bytes. Results can specify the following data:

- ASOT override or ALOT elimination
- Autosignon rejection
- /DEQUEUE messages from previous session
- Descriptor choice--first through fourth preference
- DFS3649A option
- DFS3650I option
- /EXIT conversations from previous session
- Suffix option and length—add one-to three-character suffix to LTERM and control block name (even the first occurrence)

Note

If you specify C (custom) suffixing, you must populate the Suffix length and Suffix list fields on the Autosignon panel in the IMSID options.

- LTERM and USER deletion at signoff
- LTERM name
- LTERM name default (equal to node name or user ID)
- LTERM options:
— DFSCNTE0 activation
— Input component option
— Output component option
— UC/ULC option

■ Multiple signons per user ID through LTERM suffixing:
  — LTERM suffixing technique
  — Maximum number of sessions per user ID
  — Include/exclude static terminal sessions in the calculation

■ Reset response mode setting from previous session
■ USER options:
  — USER name
  — MSGDEL option
  — response mode option
■ Bypass RACF authorization for conversation
■ Autosignon security
■ Override user ID
■ Security user ID
■ RACF user ID to be assigned to the terminal autosigning on to IMS
■ MFSTEST

The TSS Argument Propagation feature is supported for the following result fields:

■ LTERM name (for up to eight LTERMs)
■ USER name
■ RACF user ID to be assigned to the terminal autosigning on to IMS
■ Security user ID

See “TSS Argument Propagation Feature” on page 190 for information.
Signon Table

The SIGNON table type allows you to specify the following options:

■ all options that are available through ETA basic features
■ DFS3649A and DFS3650I usage or replacement options

Arguments can be 8 to 12 bytes. For arguments longer than 8 bytes, ETA forces a sequential search, which can decrease search performance unintentionally if the table was defined for binary searches. Although sequential searches are normally specified to allow pattern masking, wildcard characters are not substituted in arguments or results in this situation and can cause signon failures.

Arguments can be node names or user IDs. If you allow pattern masking when you define the table, you can specify wildcard characters for any positions in an argument.

Results must be 188 bytes, and can specify the following data:

■ ASOT override or ALOT elimination
■ /DEQUEUE messages from previous session
■ descriptor choice—first through fourth preference
■ DFS3649A option
■ DFS3650I option
■ Suffix option and length—add one-to three-character suffix to LTERM and control block name (even the first occurrence)

Note
If you specify C (custom) suffixing, you must populate the Suffix length and Suffix list fields on the Signon panel in the IMSID options.

■ /EXIT conversations from previous session
■ LTERM and USER deletion at signoff
■ LTERM name (for up to eight LTERMs)
■ LTERM name default (equal to node name or user ID)
■ LTERM options (available individually for up to eight LTERMs):
  — DFSCNTE0 activation
— input component option
— output component
— UC/ULC option

● Multiple signons per user ID through LTERM suffixing:
  — LTERM suffixing technique
  — Maximum number of sessions per user ID
  — Include/exclude static terminal sessions in the calculation

● Reset response mode setting from previous session

● Signon rejection

● USER options:
  — USER name
  — MSGDEL option
  — Response mode option

● Bypass RACF authorization for conversation
● Autosignon security
● Security user ID

● MFSTEST

The TSS Argument Propagation feature is supported for the following result fields:

● LTERM name (for up to eight LTERMs)

See “TSS Argument Propagation Feature” on page 190 for information.

**Signoff Table**

The SIGNOFF table type allows you to specify all options that are available through ETA basic features.
Arguments must be 8 bytes. Arguments can be node names or user IDs. If you allow pattern masking when you define the table, you can specify wildcard characters for any positions in an argument.

Results must be 8 bytes, and can specify the following data:

- Exit conversations
- Remove Exclusive mode
- Remove Test mode
- Remove Preset mode
- Remove MFSTEST mode
- Remove Response mode
- Remove Fast Path Response mode
- /DEQUEUE messages from previous session

**DFS3649A Replacement Table**

The DFS3649A table type allows you to specify when the DFS3649A panel should be used or replaced by one of several options.

Arguments must be 8 bytes. Arguments can specify the following data:

- Node name
- Terminal type
- Reason for message:
  - 49INIT—session initiation
  - 49FAIL—signon failure
  - 49INPUT—input provided, signon not performed
  - 49REL.—/REL issued, signon not performed
  - 49SOFF—signoff or automatic signoff

The standard TSS syntax for specifying the terminal type in TSS table arguments is 49TERMM. Table 6 on page 200 explains this syntax.
Table 6: TSS Terminal Type Syntax

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>DFS3649A TSS identifier</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>Identifies DFS3649A data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SLU1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary and alternate screen models can be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td></td>
<td>specified as described below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SLUP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3270</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NTO</td>
<td></td>
<td>Screen models cannot be specified for these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FIN</td>
<td></td>
<td>terminal types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ISC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Screen model for eligible terminal types</td>
<td>1 through 8</td>
<td>Standard VTAM screen model definitions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Results can be 8 to 16 bytes. Results can specify the following data:

- BLANKSCR—causes IMS to display a blank screen
- DFS2002—causes IMS to display the DFS2002 message
- formatName—causes IMS to display the specified user format
- LOGOFF—causes IMS to log off the terminal
- USERMSG—causes IMS to display a previously-defined user message
- formatName with DFS2002 or user message—causes IMS to display the specified user format with either the DFS2002 message or another previously-defined user message
- DFS3649A—when specified on the DFS3649A Message Options - Terminal Type panel, overrides the above options

**DFS3650I Replacement Table**

The DFS3650I table type allows you to specify when the DFS3650I panel should be used or replaced by one of several options.

Arguments must be 8 bytes. Arguments can specify the following data:

- Node name
- Terminal type
- Reason for message:
  
  — 50INIT—session initiation
  
  — 50SIGNON—signon complete
  
  — 50ASIGN—ETA Autosignon complete
  
  — 50ALOGON—IMS Autologon complete

  **Note**

  If ETA Autosignon occurs after IMS Autologon completes, then 50ASIGN will be used instead of 50ALOGON.

The standard TSS syntax for specifying the terminal type in TSS table arguments is **50TERMM**. Table 7 on page 201 explains this syntax.

### Table 7: TSS Terminal Type Syntax

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>DFS3650I TSS identifier</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Identifies DFS3650I data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>Terminal type</td>
<td>SLU1, SLU2, SLUP, 3270, NTO, 3286, FIN, ISC</td>
<td>Primary and alternate screen models can be specified as described below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Screen model for eligible terminal types (not applicable for static terminal devices)</td>
<td>1 through 8</td>
<td>Screen models can <em>not</em> be specified for these terminal types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Results* can be 8 to 16 bytes. *Results can specify the following data:*

- BLANKSCR—causes IMS to display a blank screen
- DFS058I—causes IMS to display the DFS058I message
- DFS2002—causes IMS to display the DFS2002 message
- `formatName`—causes IMS to display the specified user format
- `USERSMSG`—causes IMS to display a previously-defined user message
- `formatName` with other messages—causes IMS to display the specified user format with either the DFS058I, DFS2002, or another previously-defined user or password message
- `PASSWORD`—causes IMS to display a message that specifies when a password will expire
- `DFS3650I`—when specified on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, overrides the above options

**Unsolicited Output Tables - TRANSACT TSS and UNSOLOUT TSS types**

Two table types allow you to specify unsolicited output options:

- **TRANSACT tables** specify options by transaction
  
  Arguments must be 8 bytes and must specify a transaction name. **Results must be 32 bytes.** Results can specify the following data:
  
  - Response mode options
  - Allow/disallow dynamic transactions to be conversational transactions
  - Allow/disallow multi-segment input
  - Allow/disallow creation of Fast Path exclusive transactions
  - Allow/disallow transaction creation
  - Specify the local SYSID (for an MSC remote transaction only)
  - Specify the remote SYSID (for an MSC remote transaction only)
  - Allow/disallow the dynamic transaction being created to have a SPA size
  - Enable/disable the truncated data option
  - Allow/disallow creation of Fast Path potential transactions

- **UNSOLOUT tables** specify options by LTERM
— Names of LTERMs that are valid for use on an IMS system
— Printer LTERMs and information for creating the associated dynamic printers

Arguments must be 8 bytes and must specify an LTERM name. Results must be 152 bytes. Results can specify the following data:

— Allow/disallow LTERM creation
— ASOT override or ALOT elimination
— Descriptor to use for autologon
— ISC other system ID to autologon
— LTERM options (available individually for up to eight LTERMs):
  — Input component option
  — Output component option
  — UC/ULC option
  — node to autologon
— VTAM MODETBL name for autologon
— USER options:
  — USER name
  — MSGDEL option
  — Response mode option
— MFSTEST

The TSS Argument Propagation feature is supported for the following result fields:

— Descriptor to use for autologon
— ISC other system ID to autologon
— LTERM name (for up to eight LTERMs)
— Node to autologon
— VTAM MODETBL name for autologon
Remote LTERM Table

The RCNT table type allows you to specify the MSCNAME of an IMS system that is involved in MSC coupling.

Arguments must be 8 bytes, and must specify an LTERM name.

Results must be 12 bytes. Results specify the MSNAME of the other IMS system that is involved in the MSC coupling, and if the destination is not a remote LTERM name.

Command Security Table

The COMMANDS table type allows you to specify the command security user ID for dynamic and static terminals.

Arguments must be 8 bytes. For dynamic terminals, the argument will be a node, LTERM, or USER name. For static terminals, the argument will be a node or LTERM name. For AOI DL/I ICMD calls, the argument will be the program name. The argument is based on the key that you have specified on the Command Security Options – TSS Options panel.

Results must be 8 bytes. Results specify the RACF user ID.

Non-Discardable Message TSS Table

The NONDISC table type allows you to specify options that will influence system-wide handling of IMS non-discardable messages.

Arguments must be 8 bytes. Arguments can be transactions, PSB names, or user IDs. If you allow pattern masking when you define the table, you can specify wildcard characters for any positions in an argument.

Results must be 24 bytes. Results can specify the following data:

- IMS transaction options:
  - Apply normal IMS processing
  - Discard the IMS transaction
  - Place the IMS transaction on the transaction’s suspend queue
— Requeue the IMS transaction (to the same transaction)
— Requeue the IMS transaction to the specified transaction

■ Stop an IMS transaction
■ Issue the DFS555I message
■ Allow processing of IMS pseudo abends
■ Transaction code name to be used when the IMS transaction is to be requeued to the specified transaction

Task Instructions for TSS Tables

See any of the following sections for instructions on TSS tables:

■ “Defining a TSS Table” on page 205
■ “Editing or Browsing a TSS Table” on page 210
■ “Testing a TSS Table” on page 213
■ “Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 216
■ “Unloading a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 217
■ “Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set” on page 220
■ “Copying a TSS Table” on page 222
■ “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224
■ “Repairing a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates” on page 225

Defining a TSS Table

Before you can use a TSS table to specify IMS system customization information, you must add the TSS table to the TSS data set.
**Before you begin**

You must have created a TSS data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176.

If you want to use an existing TSS table as a basis for creating one or more new TSS tables, determine the name of the table that has the attributes that you want.

If you want to use a translate assist exit with the TSS table that you define in this task, you must have created the exit. See “Translate Assist Exits” on page 432.

**To Define a TSS Table**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify the TSS table name, data set name, and data set disposition, then go to the Define a Table pop-up window.
   a. Type 4 in the **Selection** field.
   b. Type the name of the TSS table that you want to define in the **Table name** field.
   c. Verify or change the TSS data set name and TSS data set disposition.
   d. Press **Enter**. The Define a Table pop-up window is displayed.

3. Specify the basic attributes of the TSS table.
a Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Want to copy attributes from an existing TSS table</td>
<td>Type <code>COPY tableName</code> in the <code>Command</code> field and press <code>Enter</code>. ETA displays attributes for the TSS table that you specified. Go to Step 3.g on page 207.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not want to copy attributes from an existing TSS table</td>
<td>Go to Step 3.b on page 207.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Specify the TSS table type. Place the cursor in the Table type field and press `F4` for a list of valid options.

c If you want to provide a note about the table, type the information in the `Table title` field.

d Specify the following information:

- Argument length
- Result length
- Default free space percentage
- See the ETA online help for information about each of the fields.

e If you want to use a translate assist exit with this TSS table, type the exit name in the `Table translation assist exit name` field.

f Choose a search/masking option. Type one of the following values in the selection field under the heading `Search/masking option`:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want TSS to search the table using...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The high-speed binary search method (no pattern masking)</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and press <code>Enter</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The sequential search method (pattern masking is allowed)</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and press <code>Enter</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ETA prompts you to verify the data.

**Note**

You can change the search/masking option from the ETA Table Select panel.

g Accept or change the data.
### Task Instructions for TSS Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the attributes are...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes, as necessary, and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Repeat this task for other TSS tables if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Need to define other TSS tables</td>
<td>Type the next table name in the <strong>Table name</strong> field and repeat Step 3 on page 206.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not need to define other TSS tables</td>
<td>Press <strong>F3</strong>. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create entries for the TSS table online</td>
<td>See “Editing or Browsing a TSS Table” on page 210.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create entries for the TSS table in batch</td>
<td>See “ETATSS TSO Command Processor” on page 419 for instructions on creating entries in batch or from a TSO READY prompt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Displaying Information About a TSS Table

You can view basic information about a TSS table from the ETA Table Select panel.
Before you begin

You must have created a TSS data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 for information and instructions.

To Display Information About a TSS Table

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Type 1, 2, or 3 in the Selection field and press Enter.

   Note

   Do not specify a TSS table name in the Table name field.

3. Type I in the Act field of one or more TSS tables for which you want to display information and press Enter.

The following information is displayed on the Table Information pop-up window:

- Table name
- Table type
- Table title
- Argument length
- Result length
- Free-space (defined)
- Translation assist exit
- Masking option
- Table blocks allocated
- Table block splits
- Index blocks allocated
- Index block splits

4 Press F3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you selected...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only one TSS table</td>
<td>The ETA Table Select panel is displayed. Go to Step 5 on page 210.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than one TSS table</td>
<td>Information about the next TSS table that you selected is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review the information, then press F3. Once you have viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information about all of the TSS tables that you selected, the ETA Table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select panel is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Repeat Step 3 on page 209 and Step 4 on page 210 for other TSS tables as required.

6 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Editing or Browsing a TSS Table**

ETA provides online facilities that you can use to add, change, or review TSS table data. Although the ETA online interface provides separate panels for editing and browsing TSS tables, the general appearance of the panels and the information that is available on each panel are identical.
Before you begin

You must have created a TSS data set and at least one TSS table within that data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 as well as Defining a TSS Table on page 205 for instructions.

If you want to edit a TSS table, your user access profile must give you TSS table edit authority. See “Internal Security through User Access Profiles” on page 292 for information.

To Edit or Browse a TSS Table

1 Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2 Choose the function that you want to perform, then specify basic TSS information.

   a Choose the function that you want to perform. Type one of the following values in the Selection field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit a TSS table</td>
<td>1 in the Selection field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browse a TSS table</td>
<td>2 in the Selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b Specify the TSS table name if you know it. Type one of the following in the Table name field:
If you... | Then...
---|---
Know the TSS table name | Type the name in the **Table name** field.
Want to view a selection list of TSS tables | Leave the **Table name** field blank.

c  Verify or change the following data:

  - TSS table data set name
  - TSS data set disposition

d  Press **Enter**. The panel that is displayed depends on whether you specified the TSS table name.

| If you... | Then...
---|---
Specified a TSS table name on the ETA Translate Sub-System panel | The ETA Formatted Table Edit or ETA Formatted Table Browse panel is displayed (as shown in Figure 53 on page 212). Go to Step 3 on page 213.
Left the **Table name** field blank on the ETA Translate Sub-System panel | The ETA Table Select panel is displayed. Go to Step 2.e on page 212.

e  Scroll through the list of TSS tables until you find the table that you want to edit or browse.

f  Type **S** or **B** in the **Act** field for that table and press **Enter**. The ETA Formatted Table Edit panel or the ETA Formatted Table Browse panel is displayed, as shown in Figure 53 on page 212. If you type **U** on the Table Select panel, the ETA Unformatted Table Edit panel is displayed, as shown in Figure 54 on page 213. The unformatted display is not available for browsing.

ETA Table Browse panels display the same information as the ETA Table Edit panels. However, on the ETA Table Browse panels, you cannot change data.

**Figure 53: ETA Table Edit Panel—Formatted Display**

```
File Options Help
-------------------------------------------------------------------
ETA                     Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit
Command ===> _________________________________________________ Scroll ===> PAGE
Table name: ALE      Type: RCNT          Title ETA REMOTE CNT TABLE
Commands: ADD arg., LOCATE arg., EXCLUDE, INCLUDE, RESET
Actions:  D=Delete I=Insert R=Repeat X=Exclude   Row 000001 to 000001 of 000001
Act       MSNAME   RCNT
-        ======== ----
```
3 Edit or browse the TSS table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Browse the TSS table</td>
<td>Press F3 when you have completed browsing the TSS table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit existing TSS table entries</td>
<td>Go to Step 3.a on page 213.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add new TSS table entries</td>
<td>Type ADD on the Command line and press Enter. Go to List item. on page 213.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Scroll through the display as required or use the LOCATE command. You can also use the INCLUDE, EXCLUDE, and RESET commands to hide or display TSS table entries. See the ETA online help for information on these commands.

b Press Tab to advance the cursor to the field(s) that you want to modify, then type your changes. Repeat as required.

4 Press F3 until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

Where to go from here

To implement changes that you have made to the TSS table on an IMS system that uses cache buffering for access to TSS data sets, refresh the TSS data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions.

Testing a TSS Table

Once you have specified data in a TSS table, the Test a Table pop-up window allows you to query the table to ensure that it functions as expected. This capability is particularly useful for TSS tables that use pattern masking or translate assist exits.
Figure 55: Panel Flow – Testing a TSS Table

Before you begin

You must have created a TSS data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176, as well as Defining a TSS Table on page 205 for information and instructions.

If you will be testing a translate assist exit, the load library that contains the exit must be a part of your STEPLIB concatenation.

To Test a TSS Table

1 Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2 Specify basic TSS information, then go to the Test a Table pop-up window.

   a Type 3 in the Selection field.

   b Specify the TSS table name if you know it. Type one of the following in the Table name field:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Know the TSS table name</td>
<td>Type the table name in the Table name field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Want to view a selection list of TSS</td>
<td>Leave the Table name field blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   c Verify or change the following data:

   ■ TSS table data set name
- TSS data set disposition

  d  Press Enter. The panel that is displayed depends on what you specified in the Table name field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specified a TSS table name on the ETA Translate Sub-System panel</td>
<td>The Test a Table pop-up window is displayed. Go to Step 3 on page 215.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left the Table name field blank on the ETA Translate Sub-System panel</td>
<td>The ETA Table Select panel is displayed. Go to List item on page 215.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e  Scroll through the list of TSS tables until you find the table that you want to test.

  f  Type S in the Act field for that table and press Enter. The Test a Table pop-up window is displayed.

3  Test argument and result pairs.

  a  Type an argument in the Arg field and press Enter. If TSS finds a match in the table, the result is displayed. You can only use wildcard characters in arguments if the table supports wildcard masking.

  b  Test other argument and result pairs as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to test argument and results...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In another TSS table in the same TSS data set</td>
<td>Type the name of the TSS table in the Table name field and press Enter. Repeat Step 3.a on page 215 as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In another TSS data set</td>
<td>Press F3 until the ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed and repeat this task, starting with Step 2.a on page 214.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c  Press F3 until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

Where to go from here

To implement changes that you have made to the TSS table on an IMS system that uses cache buffering for access to TSS data sets, refresh the TSS tables in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224.
Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set

The Remove a Table pop-up window allows you to delete TSS tables that you no longer need from the TSS data set.

To move a TSS table from one TSS data set to another, see “Unloading a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 217.

**Figure 56: Panel flow – Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set**

**Before you begin**

You must have created a TSS data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176, as well as Defining a TSS Table on page 205 for information and instructions.

---

**Note**

Deleting a TSS table does not automatically free space in the TSS data set. You must perform a TSS data set reorganization to reclaim the space. See Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use on page 179 for instructions.

---

**To Delete a TSS Table from the TSS Data Set**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS information, then go to the Remove a Table pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the **Table name** field.

   a. Type 5 in the **Selection** field.
b Press **Enter**. The Remove a Table pop-up window is displayed.

c Scroll through the list of TSS tables until you find the table that you want to delete.

d Type **D** in the **Act** field of each TSS table that you want to delete and press **Enter**. The Confirm Remove pop-up window is displayed.

e Acknowledge or cancel each deletion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remove the table</td>
<td><strong>1</strong> in the selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. After you have confirmed all of the deletions that you selected, the Remove a Table pop-up window is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel the deletion</td>
<td><strong>2</strong> in the selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The Remove a Table pop-up window is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Press **F3** until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reclaim DASD previously used by the deleted TSS table</td>
<td>Reorganize the TSS data set. See “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use” on page 179 or “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use” on page 181 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete the TSS table data from the IMS control region on an IMS system that uses cache buffering for access to TSS data sets</td>
<td>Refresh the TSS tables in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unloading a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set**

If you want to copy a TSS table to another TSS table, replace a TSS table, or repair a damaged TSS table, you must first perform a TSS unload to copy the TSS table to a sequential data set.
Before you begin

You must have created a TSS data set and at least one TSS table within that data set. See “TSS Data Sets” on page 175 and “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 as well as Defining a TSS Table on page 205 for instructions.

You must have authority to modify the TSS data set. Contact your system administrator.

The special unload data sets that are allocated through the following instructions have an LRECL and BLKSIZE of 4096. If this is unacceptable at your facility, use the JCL in the ETACNTL library to allocate the TSS data set with a different LRECL and BLKSIZE. See “Batch Features and ETA Macros” on page 411 for information.

---

**Note**

Unloading a TSS table does not delete the TSS table or free space in the TSS data set.

---

**To Unload a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify basic TSS information, then go to the Unload a Table pop-up window.
   
   a. Type 7 in the **Selection** field.
   
   b. If you will be unloading only one table and you know its name, you can specify the name in the **Table name** field.
c Verify or change the following data:

- TSS table data set name
- TSS data set disposition

d Press Enter. The Unload a Table pop-up window is displayed.

3 Specify the table(s) to unload and information about the output data set that will contain the unloaded table(s).

a If you have not already specified a table name, type a table name or masking pattern in the **Table name or mask** field. If you type a wildcard character as the last character in a table masking pattern, the wildcard pads to the end of the field.

b Type an output data set name in the **Data set name** field.

c Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the output data set...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is new</td>
<td>Type <strong>NEW</strong> in the <strong>Disposition status</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Already exists</td>
<td>Type <strong>OLD</strong> in the <strong>Disposition status</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d Allocate the data set.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to allocate the data set via...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-SMS allocation parameters</td>
<td>Type a VOLSER in the <strong>Volume serial</strong> field and type a unit name in the <strong>Unit name</strong> field. Leave the <strong>SMS Storage class</strong> and <strong>SMS Management class</strong> fields blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMS allocation parameters</td>
<td>Type an SMS storage class in the <strong>SMS Storage class</strong> field. Type an SMS management class in the <strong>SMS Management class</strong> field if your facility requires this parameter for SMS configuration; otherwise, you may leave this field blank. Leave the <strong>Volume serial</strong> and <strong>Unit name</strong> fields blank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note**

The VOLSER and unit name are mutually exclusive with the SMS parameters.
e Use the **New Space quantity** field to specify the number of blocks that should be reserved for the data set when it is allocated.

f Press **Enter**. ETA prompts you to verify the data.

g Accept or change the table and data set information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the information is...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorrect</td>
<td>Change the attributes as necessary, and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ETA unloads the table(s) and displays the ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages.

4 To unload other TSS tables, repeat Step 2 on page 218 and Step 3 on page 219 as required.

5 Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load the TSS table into a TSS data set other than the data set from which you unloaded it</td>
<td>See “Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set” on page 220 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the name of the TSS table and reload it into the TSS data set from which you unloaded it</td>
<td>See “Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set” on page 220 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Reload the TSS table into the TSS data set from which you unloaded it | Delete the TSS table from the TSS data set, reorganize the TSS data set, and then load the TSS table back into the TSS data set.  
See “Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 216, “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use” on page 179 or “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use” on page 181 as well as Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set on page 220 for instructions. |

**Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set**

If you have unloaded a TSS table from a TSS data set and want to put the TSS table back in the original TSS data set or copy the TSS table into a different TSS data set,
you must perform a TSS table load. The Load a Table pop-up window allows you to do this.

**Figure 58: Panel Flow – Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set**

---

**Before you begin**

You must at least have authority to perform the TSS load function. If you want to specify a new table name when you reload a TSS table into a TSS data set, you must have authority to use the TSS load function *and* authority to use the TSS define table function. Contact your system administrator.

You must have previously unloaded a TSS table from a TSS data set. See “Unloading a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 217 for instructions.

---

**Note**

If you want to reload a TSS table into the data set from which it was unloaded without changing the table name, you must first delete the original table from the data set. You may also want to reorganize the TSS data set to reclaim DASD used by the deleted table. See “Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 216 or “Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use” on page 179 for instructions.

---

**To Load a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set**

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Specify information about the TSS data set *into which you want to load a table*, then go to the Load a Table pop-up window. For this task, ignore data in the **Table name** field.

   a. Type 6 in the **Selection** field.
b In the **TSS table data set** field, type the name of the TSS data set into which the table (or tables) will be loaded.

c Verify or change the TSS data set disposition and press **Enter**. The Load a Tablepop-up window is displayed.

3 Specify the tables to load and information about the **input** data set that currently contains the TSS tables.

a Type a table name or masking pattern in the **Table name or mask** field. If you type a wildcard character as the last character in a table masking pattern, the wildcard pads to the end of the field.

b If you want to load a single TSS table and you want to change the name of the table, type the new table name in the **New table** field.

c Type the name of the sequential **input** data set in the **Data set** field.

d Type the VOLSER value of the sequential **input** data set in the **Volume serial** field and press **Enter**. ETA loads the table(s) and displays the ETA Translate Sub-System panel and any applicable messages.

4 To load other TSS tables, repeat Step 2 on page 221 and Step 3 on page 222 as required.

5 Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

To implement changes that you have made to the TSS table on an IMS system that uses cache buffering for access to TSS data sets, refresh TSS data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions.

**Copying a TSS Table**

ETA provides a utility that can duplicate TSS tables. Using this utility has the same result as performing a TSS table unload and load.
Before you begin

You must have created the TSS data set from which you want to copy a TSS table (the "source" TSS data set). See “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 for instructions.

You must have also defined the TSS table to which you want to copy the TSS table (the "target" TSS table). This target TSS table must be empty. See “Defining a TSS Table” on page 205 for instructions.

Note

If your "target" TSS table needs a larger argument or result length, you must use the batch job ETA#TSSC provided in ETACNTL.

To Copy a TSS Table

1 Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2 Type 8 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Copy TSS Tables pop-up window is displayed.

3 Specify the name of the TSS table that you want to copy (the "source" TSS table) and the name of the TSS table to which you want to copy it (the "target" TSS table) in the appropriate fields.

4 Specify the name of the TSS data set that contains both the source and target TSS tables.

5 Press Enter.
ETA copies the specified source TSS table to the specified target TSS table and data set.

6 Repeat Step 3 on page 223 through Step 5 on page 223 for other TSS tables as required.

7 Press F3 until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

Where to go from here

To implement changes that you have made to the TSS table on an IMS system that uses cache buffering for access to TSS data sets, refresh TSS data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions.

Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region

If you use cache buffering to provide faster access to TSS table data, any changes that you make to TSS tables may not take effect until you purge the cache buffers by performing a TSS refresh.

Figure 60: Panel Flow – Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to refresh TSS table data.

You must have previously created or modified one or more TSS tables. See “Defining a TSS Table” on page 205 for instructions.
WARNING

Refreshing TSS table data during peak periods may cause excessive I/O, excessive CPU utilization, and decreased performance.

To Refresh TSS Tables

1. Go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

2. Type 12 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Refresh Target pop-up window is displayed.

3. Type the name of the IMSID or group that you want to refresh in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Confirm TSS Refresh pop-up window is displayed.

4. Type 1 and press Enter to continue with the refresh, or type 2 and press Enter to cancel the refresh. If you type 1, the TSS Refresh Results pop-up window is displayed. Review the results and press F3 to return to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel. If you type 2, the ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

5. Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Repairing a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates

If GRS or an equivalent utility does not protect a TSS data set from multiple concurrent updates, TSS tables can be damaged. Use the following instructions to determine whether a TSS table needs to be reorganized and to repair any damage.

Figure 61: Panel Flow – Repairing a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates

To Repair a TSS Table Damaged by Multiple Concurrent Updates

1. Use ISPF to allocate a data set that will be used to store damaged TSS table entries. Give the data set the following attributes:

   - Data set name=TSSERROR
2 Invoke the ETA online interface, and go to the ETA Translate Sub-System panel.

From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

3 Check the status of the TSS data set that you believe contains damaged TSS tables. See “Checking the Status of a TSS Data Set” on page 184 for instructions.

4 If the status check indicates that a TSS table has been damaged or needs reorganization, unload the TSS table. See “Unloading a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 217 for instructions.

5 Reload the TSS table into the TSS data set.

As the TSS table is loaded back into the TSS data set, any duplicate or out-of-sequence table entries are written to the TSSERROR file for examination.

a If you need to free storage in the TSS data set before reloading the TSS table, delete the TSS table that you just unloaded from the TSS data set. See “Deleting a TSS Table from a TSS Data Set” on page 216 for instructions.

b Reload the TSS table into the TSS data set. See “Loading a TSS Table into a TSS Data Set” on page 220 for instructions.

6 Review the entries in the TSSERROR data set.

7 Use the batch READ command to reload the table with any valid entries. See “Batch TSS Commands and Features” on page 416 for instructions.

8 Repeat Step 3 on page 226 through Step 7 on page 226 for any other damaged TSS tables.

9 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

To implement the changes that you have made to the previously-damaged TSS table(s), refresh the TSS table data in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions.
Descriptor Features

This chapter describes the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA) descriptor features.

In most cases, you should be able to perform all required IMS system customizations using the ETA online interface and the descriptors that were created during installation of the IBM Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature. If you need to create, add, or delete a USER, LTERM, LOGON, MSC, MFS, or LU 6.2 device descriptor for an IMS system, ETA’s features simplify this process.

Overview of the EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS descriptor feature

ETA descriptor features allow you to perform the following tasks:

- Create Descriptor Lists through the ETA online interface
- Edit Descriptor Lists through the ETA online interface
- Verify descriptor definitions against either a single IMS control region or a Group of IMS control regions
- Dynamically add descriptors in either a single IMS control region or a Group of IMS control regions using a Descriptor List
- Delete descriptors through the ETA online interface
- Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x) to incorporate any changes you have made to the DFSUDT0x load module

ETA descriptor processing has been enhanced to allow multiple descriptor activities to be performed in an individual list. The descriptor information is now internally saved in a format compatible with IMS descriptors (no longer RECFM=VB). This new format enables the ETA descriptor member to be copied to the IMS.PROCLIB, or the IMS.PROCLIB could be used as the ETA descriptor library if desired. ETACNTL member ETA#ALOC will allocate the ETA descriptor PDS.
You can create Descriptor Lists to:

- Dynamically add a descriptor definition to an IMS control region
- Store information that you can use to create other descriptors

Each Descriptor List can contain information for one or more descriptors.

When you have used the Edit Descriptor List feature to create a Descriptor List, you can check the Descriptor List against either a single IMS control region or a Group of IMS control regions, or you can execute the Descriptor List to add the descriptor definitions to either a single IMS control region or a Group of IMS control regions.

The Check Descriptor List feature supplements the syntax checking available through the Edit Descriptor List feature by ensuring that the values specified through Descriptor List Edit are applicable on a specific IMS system. For example, it is possible to create MSC descriptors that specify MSNAMEs that do not actually exist. Although IMS and ETA syntax checking would not recognize this error, the Check Descriptor List feature would report it.

The Execute Descriptor List feature allows you to execute Descriptor Lists to dynamically add descriptors for use from either a single IMS control region or a Group of IMS control regions.

**WARNING**

Any changes you make to descriptors using this feature are retained across warm and emergency restarts but are NOT retained across IMS cold starts. If you want to retain a descriptor change across an IMS cold start, you must make the descriptor change permanent by updating the IMS.PROCLIB members DFSDSCxx.

---

**Task Instructions for Descriptor Features**

See the following sections for instructions on using the ETA descriptor feature:

- “Creating Descriptor Lists” on page 229
- “Editing Descriptor Lists and Descriptors” on page 232
- “Checking Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 234
- “Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 237
- “Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group” on page 239
- “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241
Creating Descriptor Lists

The Edit Descriptor List panel allows you to create Descriptor Lists that can dynamically add descriptors in an IMS control region.

**Figure 62: Panel Flow – Creating Descriptor Lists**

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to create a Descriptor List.

You must have created a Descriptor List data set. The following attributes are recommended:

- **RECFM=FB**
- **LRECL=80**
- **BLKSIZE=multiple of 80**

**To Create a Descriptor List**

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type **2** in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field.

3. Type **1** in the **Selection** field.

4. Type the name of the new Descriptor List in the **Descriptor List member** field.
5 Verify or change the name of the data set that contains the ETA Descriptor Lists. To change the data set name, type the new name in the **Descriptor List library** field.

6 Press **Enter**. The Edit Descriptor List panel is displayed.

7 Type the **I** action code in the **A** selection field and press **Enter**. The Insert Descriptor pop-up window is displayed.

8 Specify the descriptor you want to create.

   a Under the **Select the type of descriptor to create** heading, specify the type of descriptor that the Descriptor List will add.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to add a...</th>
<th>Then type this in the selection field...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USER descriptor</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM information to an existing USER descriptor</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for SLU-2 devices</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for 3270 devices</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for SLU-1 devices</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for SLU-P devices</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for terminals used for Intersystems Communication (ISC)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for ISC TCPIP</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for 3600/FINANCE devices</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGON descriptor for NTO devices (devices that use a non-VTAM attached switched communications line)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptor for MSC-connected systems that will require remote LTERMs on this IMS system or Group</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptor for Message Format Services (MFS) devices</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptor for LU 6.2 devices</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b Type the descriptor name in the **Descriptor name** field and press **Enter**. A panel similar to **Figure 63 on page 230** is displayed.

**Figure 63: Sample Edit Descriptor Panel**

---

**EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS User Guide**

230
Message delete option.
- 1. SYSINFO  - Discard DFS059 messages
- 2. NOTERM   - Discard DFS059 and DFS3650 messages
- 3. NONIOPCB - Discard message switches, /BRO, and DFS059 messages

IMS response mode option.
- 1. TRANRESP - Set response mode based on transaction definition
- 2. NORESP   - Response mode not allowed
- 3. FORCRESP - Response mode forced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>Uppercase output</th>
<th>COMPT</th>
<th>ICOMPT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ULC/UC)</td>
<td>(1,2,3,4)</td>
<td>(1,2,3,4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER1</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>______</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>______</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 The **Descriptor name** field displays the name of the descriptor. For a descriptor of a given type, the name must be unique to the IMS system or Group. You can edit this field on this panel.

10 Specify any text or comments for the descriptor that will be displayed on the Edit Descriptor List panel and other panels that display information about the Descriptor List in the **Comment** field.

11 Specify other descriptor data as required.

12 Press **F3**. The changes are saved, and the Edit Descriptor List panel is displayed.

13 Repeat this task as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to…</th>
<th>Then…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to the ETA Main Menu</td>
<td>Press <strong>F3</strong> twice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit a Descriptor List and its descriptors</td>
<td>See “Editing Descriptor Lists and Descriptors” on page 232.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check descriptor definitions against an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Checking Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 234.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add descriptor definitions to an IMS control region</td>
<td>See “Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a descriptor from an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group” on page 239.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)</td>
<td>See “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Editing Descriptor Lists and Descriptors

The Descriptor List Edit panel allows you to modify existing Descriptor Lists or to use existing Descriptor Lists as a basis for creating new Descriptor Lists. Also, you can edit the individual descriptors contained in a Descriptor List.

Figure 64: Panel Flow – Editing Descriptor Lists and Descriptors

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to edit a Descriptor List. You must have created a Descriptor List data set and at least one Descriptor List.

To Edit Descriptor Lists

1 From the ETA Main Menu, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2 Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the IMSID or Group field.

3 Type 1 in the Selection field.

4 Verify or change the name of the data set that contains the ETA Descriptor Lists. To change the data set name, type the new name in the Descriptor List library field.

5 Select a Descriptor List to edit.
   a Perform one of the following actions:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Know the name of the Descriptor List you want to modify</td>
<td>Type the name of the Descriptor List in the <strong>Descriptor List member</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The appropriate Edit Descriptor List panel is displayed. Go to Step 6 on page 233.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not know the name of the Descriptor List you want to modify</td>
<td>Leave the <strong>Descriptor List member</strong> field blank and press <strong>Enter</strong>. A list of descriptors is displayed. Go to Step 5.b on page 233.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b  Type **S** in the selection field next to the Descriptor List you want to edit.

c  Press **Enter**. The appropriate Edit Descriptor List panel is displayed.

6 Edit the Descriptor List by performing one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete a descriptor from the Descriptor List</td>
<td>Type <strong>D</strong> in the <strong>A</strong> selection field next to the name of the descriptor you want to delete and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a descriptor to the Descriptor List</td>
<td>Type <strong>I</strong> in the <strong>A</strong> selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. Go to Step 8 on page 233.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit a descriptor in the Descriptor List</td>
<td>Type <strong>S</strong> in the <strong>A</strong> selection field next to the name of the descriptor you want to edit and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The appropriate Edit Descriptor panel is displayed. See the online help for information on each field. Go to Step 7 on page 233.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Press **F3**. The changes are saved and the Edit Descriptor List panel is displayed.

8 Repeat List item. on page 233 and Step 7 on page 233 for each descriptor you want to delete, add, or edit in the Descriptor List.

9 Repeat all steps in this task for each Descriptor List you want to edit.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to the ETA Main Menu</td>
<td>Press <strong>F3</strong> twice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check descriptor definitions against an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Checking Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 234.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add descriptor definitions to an IMS control region</td>
<td>See “Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to…</td>
<td>Then…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a descriptor from an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group” on page 239.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)</td>
<td>See “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Checking Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group

Although syntax checking during data entry on the Edit Descriptor List panels ensures that you have specified option values that are allowed by IMS, these values may not be valid for a particular IMS system. You can use the Add Descriptors to IMS panel’s Check only function to verify that a descriptor added through execution of a Descriptor List uses information that is appropriate to a specific IMS system.

**Figure 65: Panel Flow – Checking Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group**

### Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to check a Descriptor List against the applicable IMSIDs. You must have created a Descriptor List data set and at least one Descriptor List. BMCXLINK and the IMS control regions that you want to check Descriptor Lists against must be active.

### To Check Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field.
3 Type 2 in the Selection field.

4 Verify or change the name of the data set that contains the ETA Descriptor Lists. To change the data set name, type the new name in the Descriptor List library field.

5 Specify the Descriptor List name.
   a Perform one of the following actions:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Know the name of the Descriptor List you want to check</td>
<td>Type the name of the Descriptor List in the Descriptor List member field and press Enter. The Add Descriptors to IMS panel is displayed. Go to Step 6 on page 235.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not know the name of the Descriptor List you want to check</td>
<td>Leave the Descriptor List member field blank and press Enter. A list of descriptors is displayed. Go to Step 5.b on page 235.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

   b Type S in the selection field of the Descriptor List you want to check and press Enter. The Add Descriptors to IMS panel is displayed.

6 Type 1 in the Selection field.

7 Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the IMSID or Group field.

8 Press Enter. ETA checks the Descriptor List for syntax errors.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the syntax check found...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No errors</td>
<td>Go to Step 10 on page 236.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Go to List item. on page 236</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

9 Review, make note of, and correct the errors.
   a Press Enter.
   b Press F5 to display the ISPF EDIT panel for the descriptor member.
   c Edit the member directly.
   d Press F3 to save your changes and display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.
   e Repeat Step 6 on page 235 through List item. on page 236 as required.
10 ETA checks the Descriptor List against the IMS control region specified in the **IMSID or Group** field.

The BMCXLINK Results status pop-up window is displayed repeatedly for each descriptor. When execution completes, the Execution Results pop-up window is displayed with the results for each descriptor in the Descriptor List.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the check found...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No errors</td>
<td>Go to Step 12 on page 236.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Go to Step 9 on page 235.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11 Review, make note of, and correct the errors.

a  Press **F3** to display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.

b  Press **F5** to display the EDIT Descriptor List panel.

c  Correct all errors in the Descriptor List.

d  Press **F3** to save your changes and display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.

e  Repeat Step 10 on page 236 through Step 9 on page 235 as required.

12 Press **F3** until the Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

13 Repeat this task for other Descriptor Lists as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to the ETA Main Menu</td>
<td>Press <strong>F3</strong> twice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add descriptor definitions to an IMS control region</td>
<td>See “Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group” on page 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a descriptor from an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group” on page 239.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)</td>
<td>See “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group

After you have used the Edit Descriptor List feature to create Descriptor Lists, you can dynamically add descriptor definitions by executing the Descriptor Lists.

Figure 66: Panel Flow – Executing Descriptor Lists against an IMS System or Group

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to execute a Descriptor List against the applicable IMSIDs. You must have created a Descriptor List data set and at least one Descriptor List. BMCXLINK and the IMS control regions that you want to execute Descriptor Lists against must be active.

To Execute a Descriptor List against an IMS System or Group

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type 2 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field.

3. Type 2 in the **Selection** field.

4. Verify or change the name of the data set that contains the ETA Descriptor Lists. To change the data set name, type the new name in the **Descriptor List library** field.

5. Specify the Descriptor List name.
   a. Perform one of the following actions:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Know the name of the Descriptor List you want to execute</td>
<td>Type the name of the Descriptor List in the <strong>Descriptor List member</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The Add Descriptors to IMS panel is displayed. Go to List item. on page 235.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not know the name of the Descriptor List you want to execute</td>
<td>Leave the <strong>Descriptor List member</strong> field blank and press <strong>Enter</strong>. A list of descriptors is displayed. Go to List item. on page 235.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Type **S** in the selection field of the Descriptor List you want to execute and press **Enter**. The Add Descriptors to IMS panel is displayed.

6 Type **2** in the **Selection** field.

7 Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field.

8 Press **Enter**. ETA checks the Descriptor List for syntax errors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the syntax check found...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No errors</td>
<td>Go to Step 10 on page 238.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Go to Step 9 on page 238.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 Review, make note of, and correct the errors.

a Press **Enter**.

b Press **F5** to display the ISPF EDIT panel for the descriptor member.

c Edit the member directly.

d Press **F3** to save your changes and display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.

e Repeat List item. on page 238 through Step 9 on page 238 as required.

10 ETA checks the Descriptor List against the IMS control region specified in the **IMSID or Group** field.

The BMCXLINK Results status pop-up window is displayed repeatedly for each descriptor. When execution completes, the Execution Results pop-up window is displayed with the results for each descriptor in the Descriptor List.
If the check found... | Then...
---|---
No errors | Go to Step 9.d on page 238.
Errors | Go to Step 11 on page 239.

11 Review, make note of, and correct the errors.
   a. Press F3 to display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.
   b. Press F5 to display the EDIT Descriptor List panel.
   c. Correct all errors in the Descriptor List.
   d. Press F3 to save your changes and display the Add Descriptors to IMS panel.
   e. Repeat List item. on page 238 through Step 11 on page 239 as required.

12 Press F3 until the Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

13 Repeat this task for other Descriptor Lists as required.

**WARNING**
Any changes you make to descriptors using this feature are retained across warm and emergency restarts but are not retained across IMS cold starts. If you want to retain a descriptor change across an IMS cold start, you must make the descriptor change permanent by updating the IMS.PROCLIB member DFSDSCxx.

Where to go from here

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to the ETA Main Menu</td>
<td>Press F3 twice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a descriptor from an IMS control region or Group</td>
<td>See “Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group” on page 239.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)</td>
<td>See “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deleting Descriptors from an IMS System or Group**

The Remove a Descriptor from IMS panel allows you to delete a descriptor from an IMS control region or Group.
**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to edit a Descriptor List. You must have created a Descriptor List data set and at least one Descriptor List. BMCXLINK and the IMS control regions that you want to check Descriptor Lists against must be active.

**To Delete Descriptors from an IMS System or Group**

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type 2 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field.

3. Type 3 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Remove a Descriptor from IMS panel is displayed.

4. Type the name of the Descriptor to be deleted from an IMS system or Group in the **Descriptor Name** field.

5. Under the Specify descriptor type heading, specify the descriptor you want to delete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to delete a...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USER descriptor</td>
<td>1 in the <strong>selection</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM descriptor from an existing USER descriptor (provided that it is not that USER descriptor’s only LTERM)</td>
<td>2 in the <strong>selection</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to delete a... | Then type...
---|---
LOGON descriptor | 3 in the selection field.
Remote LTERM from an MSC descriptor OR Sysgenned remote LTERM | 4 in the selection field.
MFS device descriptor | 5 in the selection field.
LU 6.2 descriptor | 6 in the selection field.

6 Press **Enter**. The Remove Descriptor Results pop-up window is displayed with messages indicating the status of the remove execution.

7 Press **F3**. The Remove a Descriptor from IMS panel is displayed.

8 To delete the descriptor from another IMS system or group, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field, then repeat **Step 6 on page 241 through Step 8 on page 241** for each IMS system or Group from which you want the specified descriptor deleted.

9 Repeat all steps in this task to delete another descriptor from an IMS system or group.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to the ETA Main Menu</td>
<td>Press <strong>F3</strong> twice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)</td>
<td>See “Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x” on page 241.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x**

After you have run the MFS Device Descriptor table utility (DFSUTB00 or the MFSDCT proc), you can dynamically load the Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x).

**Figure 68: Panel Flow – Reloading the entire Device Descriptor table DFSUDT0x**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to reload the Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x). BMCXMLINK and the IMS control regions that you want to update must be active.

To Reload the entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)

1. From the ETA Main Menu, type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the IMSID or Group field.

3. Type 4 in the Selection field and press Enter.

4. The Confirm Reload Device Descriptor Table pop-up window is displayed.

   **WARNING**

   Device descriptors added since the last restart of IMS or the last load of the Device Descriptor table will be lost.

5. Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the Descriptor List Edit/Execute Entry panel.

Where to go from here

Press **F3** to display the ETA Main Menu.
Exit Features

If you have already created IMS exits that perform IMS system customizations and want to continue using these exits, EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA) provides features that allow you to dynamically deactivate, reactivate, load, reload, and check the status of exits in an IMS control region. You can also perform these functions on exits that take advantage of the IMS customization features ETA provides.

Overview

ETA allows you to dynamically deactivate, reactivate, load, reload, and check the status of the following exits:

- ETA exits:
  - ETA Autosignon exit (ETAEASNn)
  - ETA Logon exit (ETAELGn)
  - ETA Logoff exit (ETAELGFn)
  - ETA Signon exit (ETAESGNn)
  - ETA Signoff exit (ETAESGFrn)
  - ETA Insert exit (ETAEINSn)
  - ETA Greetings message exit (ETAEGMEmn)
  - ETA non-discardable message exit (ETAEENDMn)

---

**Note**

ETA works with all supported versions of the IBM IMS system. The variable \(n\) in the ETA exit names represents the different IMS versions. For example, the \(n\) at the end of the default exit name is replaced by 5 for IMS Version 13.1 or 6 for IMS Version 14.1.
- IMS exits:
  - IMS Logon exit (DFSLGNX0)
  - IMS Logoff exit (DFSLGFX0)
  - IMS Signon exit (DFSSGNX0)
  - IMS Signoff exit (DFSSGFX0)
  - IMS Insert exit (DFSINSX0)
  - IMS Command Authorization exit (DFSCCMD0)
  - IMS Greetings Message exit (DFSGMSG0)
  - IMS Non-Discardable Messages exit (DFSNDMX0)

You can use the ETA exit reload feature to activate new versions of an existing exit, even if the new version has a different name from the existing version of the exit.

The status report provides the same information as the `/DISPLAY ETA EXITS DETAIL` command:

- Exit type
- Exit name
- Assembly and link edit information
- Status (active or inactive)
- Reload status:
  - Number of times that the exit was reloaded
  - Number of times that exit execution was delayed by a reload
  - Number of times that reload execution was delayed by exit execution

Task Instructions for ETA Exit Features

See the following sections for instructions on using ETA features for exits:

- “Deactivating and Reactivating Exits” on page 245
Deactivating and Reactivating Exits

ETA allows you to deactivate exits that are available to the IMS control region and reactivate exits that you have previously deactivated. These changes remain in effect until the next IMS restart (emergency, warm, or cold start).

**Figure 69: Panel Flow – Deactivating and Reactivating Exits**

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to access exit options for the appropriate IMSIDs or Groups.

You must have created one or more of the IMS and ETA exits listed in “Overview” on page 243. Exits must be made available to IMS either through standard IMS startup procedures or through use of the ETA feature that allows you to dynamically load exits.

BMCXLINK and the appropriate IMS control regions must be active.

To Deactivate or Reactivate an Exit

1. Go to the Exit Administration Panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Exit Administration panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name.

   To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter.

3. Type the option number of the type of exit you want to deactivate or reactivate in the Exit type selection field.
**Note**

The exit names displayed on this panel are the default exit names. If the ETA reload feature has been used for any of these exits, the actual exit name may be something other than the default. You can use the Status option available from the ETA Exit Administration panel or the /DISPLAY ETA EXITS DETAIL command to display the actual names of the exits in use on the IMS system. See “Checking the Status of Exits” on page 248 or “/DISPLAY Command” on page 256 for instructions.

4 Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate the exit</td>
<td>1 in the Exit action selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivate the exit</td>
<td>2 in the Exit action selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ETA deactivates or reactivates the exit.

5 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs or Groups as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Press F3. The ETA Main Menu is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify that the changes took effect</td>
<td>Check the status of the exit(s). See “Checking the Status of Exits” on page 248 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load or reload other exits so that exits or updated exits are available to an IMS control region</td>
<td>Use the ETA exit load/reload feature. See “Loading and Reloading Exits” on page 246 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Loading and Reloading Exits**

ETA allows you to dynamically load exits that were not made available to IMS when the control region was started and reload updates to exits that are already available to IMS. Exits that you load or reload are immediately active, even if you reload an exit that was previously deactivated. These changes remain in effect until the next IMS restart (emergency, warm, or cold start).
**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to access exit options for the appropriate IMSIDs.

You must have created at least one version of one or more of the IMS and ETA exits listed in “Overview” on page 243.

BMCXLINK and the appropriate IMS control regions must be active.

**To Reload Exits**

1. Go to the Exit Administration Panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 3 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Exit Administration panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**.

3. Type the option number of the type of exit you want to load or reload in the **Exit type** selection field.

   **Note**

   The exit names displayed on this panel are the default exit names. If the ETA reload feature has been used for any of these exits, the actual exit name may be something other than the default. You can use the Status option available from the ETA Exit Administration panel or the **/DISPLAY ETA EXITS DETAIL** command to display the actual names of the exits in use on the IMS system. See “Checking the Status of Exits” on page 248 or “/DISPLAY Command” on page 256 for instructions.

4. Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reload an exit using the same name</td>
<td>3 in the <strong>Exit action</strong> selection field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then type...
---|---
Reload an exit using a different name | 3 in the Exit action selection field and type the exit name in the Exit name field.
Load an exit that is not currently available to IMS | 3 in the Exit action selection field and type the exit name in the Exit name field.

5 Press Enter. ETA reloads the exit.

6 Repeat Step 3 on page 247 through Step 5 on page 248 for other exits as required.

7 Repeat this task for other IMSIDs or Groups as required.

Where to go from here

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Press F3. The ETA Main Menu is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify that the changes took effect</td>
<td>Check the status of the exit(s). See “Checking the Status of Exits” on page 248.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Checking the Status of Exits

ETA allows you to display information about exits available to IMS.

Figure 71: Panel Flow – Checking the Status of Exits

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to access exit options for the appropriate IMSIDs or Groups.

You must have created one or more of the IMS and ETA exits listed in “Overview” on page 243. Exits must be made available to IMS either through standard IMS
startup procedures or through use of the ETA feature that allows you to dynamically load exits.

BMCXLINK and the appropriate IMS control regions must be active.

**To Check the Status of Exits**

1. Go to the Exit Administration Panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type **3** in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Exit Administration panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group name. To change the IMSID or Group name, type the new IMSID or Group name in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**.

3. Type the option number of the type of exit whose status you want to check in the **Exit type** selection field.

   **Note**

   The exit names displayed on this panel are the default exit names. If the ETA reload feature has been used for any of these exits, the actual exit name may be something other than the default. This task will provide the actual exit name.

4. Type **4** in the **Exit action** selection field and press **Enter**. The Exit Status panel is displayed.

5. Repeat Step 3 on page 249 and Step 4 on page 249 for other exits as required.

6. Repeat this task for other IMSIDs or Groups as required.

**Where to go from here**

Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Press F3. The ETA Main Menu is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate or deactivate exits in an IMS control region</td>
<td>See “Deactivating and Reactivating Exits” on page 245.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ETA Keywords That Enhance IMS Commands

This chapter describes EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA) keywords and parameters for the IMS ASSIGN, DISPLAY, and SECURE commands.

Conventions

This chapter uses standard diagrams to show the syntax for using ETA keywords with IMS commands.

You can use generic parameters with certain ETA keywords for IMS commands. With these keywords, you can substitute certain characters (\* and \%) for one or more characters in a parameter. See the IBM publication, *IMS Operators Reference*, for information on using generic parameters.

/ASSIGN Command

With the ETA enhanced /ASSIGN command, you can redirect output by changing the IMS autologon data for LTERMs.

By default, the output is delivered the next time output is queued to the LTERM that you specify in the command (an optional keyword allows you to attempt immediate delivery of queued output).

You can use the /ASSIGN LTERM *termname EUO* nodename command to perform the following functions:

- Specify autologon data for a destination that does not exist
- Change autologon data for an existing destination
- Override autologon data specified in an Unsolicited Output TSS table
Reset autologon data that was changed through the `/ASSIGN LTERM ltermname EUO nodename` command

You can issue the `/ASSIGN` command

- From the ETA Execute IMS Command panel
- From an IMS terminal with the necessary security authorization
- Through an IMS AOI application program

**Syntax Diagram**

The following figure shows the syntax, keywords, and parameters for the `/ASSIGN` command.

Abbreviations appear in uppercase.

Figure 72: ASSIGN Command Syntax

---

**/ASSign Keywords and Parameters**

To use the ETA enhanced `/ASSign` command to redirect output, you must specify the following keywords and parameters:

**LTERM ltermname**

Use the LTERM keyword with the `ltermname` parameter to specify the LTERM for which you want to change IMS autologon data.

**Note**

The LTERM may or may not exist in the system when you issue the command, and it may or may not exist in the Unsolicited Output TSS table.

Use the EUO keyword to specify the autologon node name for the LTERM. The following parameters determine the node name that will be used.
nodename

Use the nodename parameter to specify an autologon node name for the LTERM. If you previously used this command to redirect output, you can assign the output to its original node name or use the /ASSign LTERM ltermname EUO ORIGINAL command to cancel the redirection.

**Note**
The node name may or may not exist in the system when you issue the command, and it may not exist in the Unsolicited Output TSS table.

ORIGINAL

If you previously used the /ASSign LTERM ltermname EUO nodename command to redirect output, use the ORIGINAL parameter to cancel the redirection. This parameter is useful if you do not know the original node name.

The following keywords and parameters are optional for LTERMs that are included in an Unsolicited Output TSS table, and are required for all other LTERMs. If you specify these parameters when assigning LTERMs to nodes that already exist, the data that you specify will be ignored.

**Note**
Remember the following when using these keywords and parameters:

- You must specify the LOGOND keyword and a value for the descname parameter if the LTERM that is specified by the ltermname parameter does not exist in an Unsolicited Output TSS table.
- When the /ASSign LTERM ltermname EUO nodename command executes successfully, ETA stores all of the information used to perform the redirection. This allows the node to which output is redirected to be recreated if it is deleted for any reason.

LOGOND descname

Use the LOGOND keyword with the descname parameter to specify the LOGON descriptor that ETO will use to autologon the node when a message is queued to the dynamic LTERM that is specified by the ltermname parameter. The LOGON descriptor that you specify must exist on the IMS system.

If you specify the LOGOND keyword, it overrides any LOGON descriptor information that is specified in an Unsolicited Output TSS table that contains the LTERM that is specified by the ltermname parameter.

If you do not specify the LOGOND keyword, ETA uses the following algorithm to find the LOGON descriptor name:
1 If an UNSOLOUT TSS table exists, ETA searches the AutoLogn
       Nodename result field for the node name that is specified in the command
       and uses the descriptor that is specified in the Node Desc field of the first
       entry that matches the search.

2 If the previous search fails and an UNSOLOUT TSS table exists, ETA
       searches the argument fields for the LTERM name that is specified in the
       command and uses the descriptor that is specified in the Node Desc result
       field.

3 If the previous searches fail and the node name that is specified in the
       command exists on the IMS system, ETA uses the descriptor that was used
       to create the node.

4 If all attempts fail, the command fails.

MODETBL modetblname

Use the MODETBL keyword with the modetblname parameter to specify the
name of a VTAM mode table entry that ETO will use to autologon the node
when a message is queued to the dynamic LTERM that is specified by the
ltermname parameter. ETA does not verify that the mode table name is valid
on the IMS system.

If the LOGON descriptor name is found in an Unsolicited Output TSS table
and if the TSS table also specifies a VTAM mode table, ETA will ignore the
information that is specified with the MODETBL keyword and use the data
from the TSS table. If the LOGOND keyword overrides the LOGON
descriptor information in the TSS table, any VTAM mode table information
that is contained in the TSS table will also be ignored.

ID iscid

Use the ID keyword with the iscid parameter to specify the ISC ID of another
system that is connected to the current IMS system. This parameter
corresponds to the ID parameter of the IMS /OPNDEST command. ETA does
not verify that the ISC ID is valid on the IMS system.

If the LOGON descriptor name is found in an Unsolicited Output TSS table
and if the TSS table also specifies an ISC ID, ETA will ignore the information
that is specified with the ID keyword and use the data from the TSS table. If
the LOGOND keyword overrides the LOGON descriptor information in the
TSS table, any ISC ID information that is contained in the TSS table will also
be ignored.

ACTIVATE

If you specify the ACTIVATE keyword with the /ASSign LTERM EUO
command, ETA attempts to immediately deliver output that is currently
queued to the specified LTERM. Otherwise, output is delivered to the device the next time output is queued to the specified LTERM.

/CHANGE Command

With the ETA enhanced /CHANGE command, you can facilitate control block deletion for the STSN device type (SLUP, 3600/FINANCE) without performing an IMS cold start.

After you issue the /CHANGE NODE command, you must issue the /CHECKPOINT command (simple or SNAPQ checkpoint) for the control block deletion(s) to complete.

Use the /CHANGE TSS ALLOC command to allocate a TSS data set.

Use the /CHANGE TSS UNALLOC command to unallocate an existing TSS data set.

You can issue the /CHANGE command

- From the ETA Execute IMS Command panel
- From an IMS terminal with the necessary security authorization
- Through an IMS AOI application program
- From the IMS outstanding reply (WTOR)

Syntax Diagram_2

The following figure shows the syntax, keywords, and parameters for the /CHANGE command.

Abbreviations appear in uppercase.

Figure 73: CHANGE Command Syntax
/CHAnge Keywords and Parameters

You must specify the NODE keyword or the TSS keyword to execute the /CHAnge command. The ALLOC keyword or the UNALLOC keyword must follow the TSS keyword.

/CHAnge NODE nodename INACTIVE

To use the ETA enhanced /CHAnge command to facilitate STSN control block deletion, you must specify the following keywords and parameters:

NODE nodename

Use the NODE keyword with the nodename parameter to specify the STSN node control block to be marked as eligible for deletion.

INACTIVE

Specify the INACTIVE keyword with the /CHAnge NODE command to notify ETA that STSN processing is required.

/CHAnge TSS ALLOC

Use the TSS and ALLOC keywords to allocate a new TSS data set.

/CHAnge TSS UNALLOC

Use the TSS and UNALLOC keywords to unallocate an existing TSS data set.

/DISPLAY Command

With the ETA enhanced /DISPLAY command, you can display information about IMS systems.

You can issue the /DISPLAY command

- From the ETA Execute IMS Command panel
- From an IMS terminal with the necessary security authority
- Through an IMS AOI application program

The following table contains information about /DISPLAY keywords and parameters.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To see information about...</th>
<th>Including...</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activity on an IMS system</td>
<td>Number of dynamic devices, logons, and timeouts</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY ETA STATUS” on page 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCT entries</td>
<td>Entries in the IMS device characteristics table</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR DEVICE” on page 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exits</td>
<td>ETO, ETA, IMS, and user exits</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY ETA EXITS” on page 265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS customization options</td>
<td>Values specified and options selected through the ETA online interface</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY ETA OPTIONS” on page 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logon descriptors</td>
<td>Options specified in a descriptor</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR NODE” on page 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logon status of an IMS system</td>
<td>Whether logons are prohibited through use of the /SECURE DISABLE LOGON command</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY LOGON Keywords and Parameters” on page 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERMs</td>
<td>Timeouts and descriptors</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY ETA LTERM” on page 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MSNAME values for remote LTERMs</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR MSNAME” on page 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodes</td>
<td>Timeouts, descriptors, and associated user</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY ETA NODE” on page 269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nodes that can log on to IMS because the /SECURE LOGON ALLOW command has been issued for the nodes after using the /SECURE DISABLE LOGON command</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY LOGON Keywords and Parameters” on page 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output redirections</td>
<td>Affected LTERMs and current assignments</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY EUO Keywords and Parameters” on page 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signon status of an IMS system</td>
<td>Whether signons are prohibited through the /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON command</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY SIGNON Keywords and Parameters” on page 281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS tables</td>
<td>Argument and result length, availability of wildcard masking, and the translate assist exit name</td>
<td>“/DISPLAY TSSTABLE Keywords and Parameters” on page 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rows that match a specified TSS argument</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To see information about... | Including... | Reference
--- | --- | ---
User IDs that can be used to sign on to IMS | User IDs that can be used to sign on to IMS because the /SECURE SIGNON ALLOW command has been issued for the user IDs after using the /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON command | “/DISplay SIGNON Keywords and Parameters” on page 281
Users | Timeouts, descriptors, and associated LTERMs | “/DISplay ETA USER” on page 274
 | Options specified in a descriptor | “/DISplay DESCriptor USER” on page 263
ETA Command Processing table | Definition for a specific command | “/DISplay ETA COMMAND” on page 264

Syntax Diagram_3

The following figure shows the syntax, keywords, and parameters for the /DISPLAY command.
Keywords and parameters are presented alphabetically except for the ALL parameter, which is always presented last. Abbreviations appear in uppercase.

Figure 74: DISPLAY Command Syntax (Part 1 of 2)
The /DISPlay DESCriptor command provides descriptor information that is unavailable through the standard IMS /DISPLAY command. You must specify one of the following keywords to execute the command:

- DEVICE
- MSNAME
- NODE
- USER

/DISplay DESCriptor DEVICE

The DEVICE keyword displays parameters that are specified for the FEAT= keyword for all entries in the IMS device characteristics table (DCT), arranged by symbolic type name. The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay DESCriptor DEVICE command.

Figure 76: /DISplay DESCriptor DEVICE Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>LINES</th>
<th>COLS</th>
<th>FEATURES</th>
<th>NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3270-A02</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CARD PFK PEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A03</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CARD PFK PEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A03</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>IGNORE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A04</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CARD PFK PEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A04</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>IGNORE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A07</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>CARD PFK PEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A07</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>IGNORE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270-A08</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>IGNORE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94083/162140</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/DISPLAY DESCriptor MSNAME

The MSNAME keyword displays the MSNAME that is specified in MSC (remote LTERM) descriptors.

You must specify a parameter with the MSNAME keyword to execute the /DISPLAY DESCriptor command. The following parameters determine the remote LTERM descriptors for which ETA will display information:

rcntname

The rcntname parameter displays information about remote LTERMs that were created by MSC descriptors or an IMS SYSGEN. When specifying multiple remote LTERMs, separate the remote LTERM names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY DESCriptor MSNAME rcntname command. In this sample, rcntname is E41MTRM2.

Figure 77: /DISPLAY DESCriptor MSNAME rcntname Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RCNT</th>
<th>MSNAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E41MTRM2</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALL

The ALL parameter displays information about all remote LTERMs that exist in the IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY DESCriptor MSNAME ALL command.

Figure 78: /DISPLAY DESCriptor MSNAME ALL Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RCNT</th>
<th>MSNAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VRCNT06</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRCNT01</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RCNT001</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RCNT002</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RCNT003</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RCNT004</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSCL320</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMSATRM2</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RMTM042</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RMTM043</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E41MTRM1</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E41MTRM2</td>
<td>MSC32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/DISPLAY DESCriptor NODE

The NODE keyword displays the following information about logon descriptors:

- Descriptor name
- UNITYPE specification
You must specify a parameter with the NODE keyword to execute the /DISplay DESCriptor command. The following parameters determine the logon descriptors for which ETA will display information:

*descname*

The *descname* parameter displays information about one or more specific logon descriptors. When specifying multiple descriptors, separate the descriptor names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay DESCriptor NODE *descname* command. In this sample, the descriptor name is TSSSLU2.

**Figure 79: /DISplay DESCriptor NODE descname Sample Output**

```
DESC     TYPE UNIT ALOT ASOT OBUF MODETBL  BK SEGSZ OUT-EDIT INP-EDIT PSIZ
TSSSLU2  SLU2   NONE NONE 1500          NO
OPTIONS=COPY,NOASR,NOFES,OPNDST,PAGDEL,PROT,TRSOSI,UNLOCK
FEAT=PFK,PEN,CARD
*94083/165907*
```

**ALL**

The ALL parameter displays information for all logon descriptors that exist in the IMS system.
The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay DESCriptor NODE ALL` command.

**Figure 80: /DISplay DESCriptor NODE ALL Sample Output**

```
DESC     TYPE UNIT ALOT ASOT  OBUF MODETBL  BK SEGSZ OUT-EDIT INP-EDIT PSIZ
TSSSLU2  SLU2     NONE None 1500   NO
OPTIONS=COPY,NOASR,NOFES,OPNDST,PAGDEL,PROT,TRSOSI,UNLOCK
FEAT=PFK,PEN,CARD
TSSSLU2  SLU2     NONE None 1500   NO
OPTIONS=COPY,NOASR,NOFES,OPNDST,PAGDEL,PROT,TRSOSI,UNLOCK
FEAT=PFK,PEN,CARD
TSSSLU1  SLU1     NONE None  256   NO  256
OPTIONS=BSEL,M,NOASR,NOCON,NOFES,OPNDST,RELRQ
COMPT1=CONSOLE,BASIC-SCS1
TSSSLUP  SLUP     NONE None   64     NO  256
OPTIONS=FPAK,NOASR,NOBID,NOMFS,OPNDST,PAGDEL,RELRQ
COMPT1=PROGRAM1,BASIC
TSSFIN   FIN      NONE None   64     NO
OPTIONS=FPAK,NOASR,NOBID,NOMFS,NOMFS,OPNDST,PAGDEL,RELRQ,SCAN
FEAT= NO FEATURES
TSSNTO   NTO      NONE None   256   NO  256
OPTIONS=NOASR,NOFES,NOMFS,NOPNDST
TSS3270  3270 3277 NONE NONE  2000   NO
OPTIONS=NOFES,OPNDST,PAGDEL,PROT,TRSOSI,UNLOCK
FEAT=PFK,PEN,CARD
*94083/165907*
```

**/DISplay DESCriptor USER**

The USER keyword displays the following information about user descriptors:

- User descriptor name
- ASOT value
- LTERM names
- ULC/UC specification for the LTERM
- ICOMPT and COMPT values
- Response mode specification
- MSGDEL values
- Autologon LU, LOGMODE, ID, and descriptor names

You must specify a parameter with the USER keyword to execute the `/DISplay DESCriptor` command. The following parameters determine the user descriptors for which ETA will display information:
descname

The descname parameter displays information about one or more specific user descriptors. When specifying multiple descriptors, separate the descriptor names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR USER descname command. In this sample, the descriptor name is DFSUSER.

Figure 81: /DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR USER descname Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>RESP</th>
<th>MSGDEL</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>AUTOLOGN</th>
<th>AUTODESC</th>
<th>AUTOLMOD</th>
<th>AUTOID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94083/163145</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALL

The ALL parameter displays information for all user descriptors that exist in the IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR USER ALL command.

Figure 82: /DISPLAY DESCRIPTOR USER ALL Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>RESP</th>
<th>MSGDEL</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>AUTOLOGN</th>
<th>AUTODESC</th>
<th>AUTOLMOD</th>
<th>AUTOID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLJRESP1</td>
<td>FORCRESP</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJRESP1</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=1</td>
<td>COMPT=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLJRESP2</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJRESP2</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=1</td>
<td>COMPT=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLJNOIO3</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>NONIOPCB</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJNOIO3</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=1</td>
<td>COMPT=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XYZSP1</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=XYZPOOL12</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=2</td>
<td>COMPT=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLJNOIO1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJNOIO1</td>
<td>NONIOPCB</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLJSYS12</td>
<td>FORCRESP</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJSYS12</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=1</td>
<td>COMPT=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLJLTRMS</td>
<td>FORCRESP</td>
<td>NOTERM</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>L3A4U1</td>
<td>SLU2AB</td>
<td>LSX32705</td>
<td>E41I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=SLJLTRMS</td>
<td>ULC/UC=ULC</td>
<td>ICOMPT=3</td>
<td>COMPT=4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94083/163155</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/DISPLAY ETA Keywords and Parameters

The /DISPLAY ETA command provides information that is unavailable through the standard IMS /DISPLAY command for IMS exits, dynamic LTERMs, dynamic terminals and printers, and users.

/DISPLAY ETA COMMAND

Use the COMMAND keyword to display security information from the active Command Processing table for the specified command (and keyword if specified).
To issue `/DISplay ETA COMMAND`, you must specify the command name with the COMMAND keyword.

`cmdname`

The `cmdname` parameter specifies the command for which security information will be generated. This parameter is required. If this parameter exceeds eight characters, then truncate it to eight characters or less, or specify its three-character abbreviation.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay ETA COMMAND cmdname` command.

**Figure 83: /DISplay ETA COMMAND cmdname Sample Output**

```
/DIS ETA COMMAND START
COMMAND    PROC-OPT  KEYW  KEYO  TXTO  PRM1  ALW-ALL  ALW-GENR
START      VERIFY     Y     N     N     N       Y        Y
*97003/122250*
```

You can also specify any securable keyword for the specified command.

`keywordname`

The `keywordname` parameter specifies a securable keyword for the specified command. If you specify the `keywordname` parameter, ETA will display the command security information for the specified command and keyword. If `keywordname` is not securable, KEYWORD NOT FOUND will be displayed. If `keywordname` is a noise keyword (for example, the TO in the `/DISplay ETA COMMAND BRO TO` command), only output for `cmdname` will be displayed. This parameter is optional.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay ETA COMMAND cmdname keywordname` command.

**Figure 84: /DISplay ETA COMMAND cmdname keywordname Sample Output**

```
/DIS ETA COMMAND START DC
COMMAND    PROC-OPT  KEYW  KEYO  TXTO  PRM1  ALW-ALL  ALW-GENR
START      VERIFY     Y     N     N     N       Y        Y
KEYWORD     ABRV PROC-OPT SKIP PARM SYN ALW-ALL ALW-GENR
DC          DC   REJECT    N    N    N     -       -
*97003/122311*
```

### /DISplay ETA EXITS

Use the EXITS keyword to display the following information:

- Exit type
- Exit name
- Assembly and link date and time
- Status (active or inactive)
- Tracing status (active or inactive)
- Reload status (whether the exit is currently being reloaded)

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay ETA EXITS command.

**Figure 85: /DISplay ETA EXITS Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXIT TYPE</th>
<th>EXIT NAME</th>
<th>ASM/LINK INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA AUTOSIGNON</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA LOGON</td>
<td>ETAELGN5 7/19/9410.34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA SIGNON</td>
<td>ETAESGN5 7/19/9410.34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA INSERT</td>
<td>ETAEINS5 7/19/9410.33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA NONDISC</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO LOGON</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO LOGOFF</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO SIGNON</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO SIGNOFF</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO INSERT</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS COMMAND</td>
<td>DFSCCMD0 7/15/9314.26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS GREETING</td>
<td>NO EXIT PROVIDED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94228/145220</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also include one or both of the following parameters with the EXITS keyword to specify the amount of information that you want:

**exittype**

The `exittype` parameter specifies the type of exit for which you want to display information. Valid values for this parameter are as follows:

- **ALOGON** – the ETA logon exit
- **ALOGOFF** – the ETA logoff exit
- **ASIGNON** – the ETA signon exit
- **ASIGNOFF** – the ETA signoff exit
- **AAUTOSIG** – the ETA autosignon exit
- **AINSERT** – the ETA insert exit
- **AGREETIN** – the ETA greeting messages exit
- **ANONDISC** – the ETA non-discardable messages exit
- **ILOGON** – the IMS logon exit
- **ILOGOFF** – the IMS logoff exit
- **ISIGNON** – the IMS signon exit
The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay ETA EXITS exittype command.

**Figure 86: /DISplay ETA EXITS exittype Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXIT TYPE</th>
<th>EXIT NAME</th>
<th>ASM/LINK INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA SIGNON</td>
<td>ETAESGN5</td>
<td>7/19/94 10.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>94228/144159</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DETAIL**

The DETAIL parameter is an optional parameter that you can specify with the EXITS keyword or the exittype parameter to display the following additional information about IMS exits:

- Number of times that the exit was reloaded
- Number of times that a reload delayed exit execution

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay ETA EXITS exittype DETAIL command.

**Figure 87: /DISplay ETA EXITS exittype DETAIL Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXIT TYPE</th>
<th>EXIT NAME</th>
<th>ASM/LINK INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA SIGNON</td>
<td>ETAESGN5</td>
<td>7/19/94 10.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>94228/160322</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EXIT IS NOT ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EXIT TRACING NOT ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NO PENDING EXIT ACTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EXIT RELOADED 0000 TIMES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EXIT WAITED FOR RELOAD 0000 TIMES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RELOAD WAITED FOR EXIT 0000 TIMES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**/DISplay ETA LTERM**

The LTERM keyword displays the following information about dynamic LTERMs:

- Associated node name
- DFSCNTE0 usage
- LTERM name
- Descriptor used to create the LTERM
You must specify a parameter with the LTERM keyword to execute the /DISPLAY ETA LTERM command. The following parameters determine the dynamic LTERMs for which ETA will display information:

**Itername**

The *Itername* parameter displays information about one or more specific dynamic LTERMs. When specifying multiple LTERMs, separate the LTERM names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY ETA LTERM *Itername* command. In this sample, the LTERM name is L315G1.

**Figure 88: /DISPLAY ETA LTERM *Itername* Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>DFSCNTEO</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>NODE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HEX**

Use the HEX parameter with the *Itername* parameter to display the following additional information:

- CNT BCB HDR
- CNT data for the LTERM’s LQB
- SPQB data for the user associated with the LTERM (if the data exists)

This parameter is provided for use in problem resolution, and is not required. It displays information for only one LTERM, in dump format.

**ALL**

The ALL parameter displays information for all dynamic LTERMs that exist in the IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY ETA LTERM ALL command.

**Figure 89: /DISPLAY ETA LTERM ALL Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>DFSCNTEO</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>NODE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0161</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0161</td>
<td>VTHB0161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0162</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0162</td>
<td>VTHB0162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0163</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0163</td>
<td>VTHB0163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0164</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0164</td>
<td>VTHB0164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
<td>VTHB0165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*2016341/090706*
/DISPLAY ETA NODE

Use the NODE keyword to display the following information about dynamic terminals:

- Node name
- Terminal type and model number
- ASOT and ALOT values
- Descriptor used to create the terminal
- Primary and alternate screen sizes for the terminal
- LTERM
- User ID
- User name

You must specify a parameter with the NODE keyword to execute the /DISPLAY ETA NODE command. The following parameters determine the dynamic terminals for which ETA will display information:

donename

The donename parameter displays information about one or more specific dynamic terminals. When specifying multiple terminals, separate the node names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY ETA NODE donename command. In this sample, the node name is L315G1.

Figure 90: /DISPLAY ETA NODE donename Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>ALOT</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>VTM-PR</th>
<th>VTM-AL</th>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>USERID</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>MODETBL=N32702</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L315G1</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>GCB</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>94228/170501</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HEX

Use the HEX parameter with the donename parameter to display the following additional information:

- VTCB BCB HDR information
- ECB prefix
- CLB, CTB, CTT, CRB, and CIB data for the node VTCB
- SPQB data for the user assigned to the node (if the data exists)

This parameter is provided for use in problem resolution and is not required. It displays information for only one node, in dump format.

**ALL**

The ALL parameter displays information for all dynamic terminals that exist in the IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay ETA NODE ALL` command.

**Figure 91: /DISplay ETA NODE ALL Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>ALOT</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>VTM-PR</th>
<th>VTM-AL</th>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>USERID</th>
<th>USER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L31G1</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X 80</td>
<td>GCB</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EM3</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X 80</td>
<td>L31EM3</td>
<td>LLM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EL3</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X 80</td>
<td>L31EL3</td>
<td>LLM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EL1</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X 80</td>
<td>L31EL1</td>
<td>LLM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EK3</td>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>24X</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>24X 80</td>
<td>L31EK3</td>
<td>LLM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**/DISplay ETA OPTIONS**

The OPTIONS keyword displays information about the IMS customization options that you have specified through the ETA online interface.

You must use one of the keywords that are described below with the OPTIONS keyword to specify the type of information that ETA will display. In all cases, this command displays the following information:

- Date of the last update to the IMSID options module
- User ID of the person who last updated the IMSID options module
- Number of IMS refreshes since the IMS control region was started
- User ID of the person who performed the last IMS refresh
- Status that indicates whether the option is active (except for the BMCXLINK, ETA, and INIT keywords)

**AUTOSIGN**

The AUTOSIGN keyword displays values that are specified on the Autosignon Defaults, Autosignon LTERM/User name, and Autosignon TSS Options panels.
BMCXLINK

The BMCXLINK keyword displays values that are specified on the Basic Defaults panel.

COMMAND

The COMMAND keyword displays values that are specified on the Command Security Defaults and Command Security TSS Options panels. This keyword displays the message "OPTION IS DISABLED" if Command Security is active without a class name specification.

DFS2467

The DFS2467 keyword displays values that are specified on the DFS2467I Terminal type panel.

DFS3649

The DFS3649 keyword displays values that are specified on the DFS3649A Defaults, DFS3649A Terminal type, and DFS3649A TSS Options panels.

DFS3650

The DFS3650 keyword displays values that are specified on the DFS3650I Defaults, DFS3650I Terminal type, and DFS3650I TSS Options panels.

ETA

The ETA keyword displays the following information:

- Activation of ETA’s IMS storage display panel
- Activation of ETA’s IMS storage zap panel
- IMSID Group
- Activation of ETA IMSID options

If Command Security is active without a class name specification, this keyword displays the message "COMMAND=D," indicating that Command Security is disabled.

INIT

The INIT keyword displays information about IMS initialization options that ETA supports. The IMS initialization options that ETA supports are as follows:

- Password re-verification during IMS signon
- Alternate ALOT=0 processing
- VTAM generic resource processing
- Resource sharing for ISC in Resource Manager

LOGON

The LOGON keyword displays values that are specified on the Logon Defaults, Logon Terminal type, and Logon TSS Options panels.

The messages "FORMAT NAME=Y-1" and "SESSION MANAGER=Y-S" may appear among the displayed messages. The "-1" indicates that the initial format will be displayed the first time only. The "-S" indicates that the VTAM node name will be made available only to the IMS log and exits.

LOGOFF

The LOGOFF keyword displays values that are specified on the Logoff Defaults and Logoff TSS Options panels.

NODE

The NODE keyword allows you to determine where certain ETA and IMS values were derived for a specific node or for all nodes. The following values are displayed:

- ALOT elimination
- MFS test
- LTERM name
- DFS3649
- DFS3650
- Response mode
- Message delete (MSGDEL)
- Automatic logoff (ALOT)
- Automatic signoff (ASOT)

NONDISC

The NONDISC keyword displays values that are specified on the Non-discardable Message Options - Defaults and Non-discardable Message Options – TSS Options panels.
SIGNON

The SIGNON keyword displays values that are specified on the Signon Defaults, Signon LTERM/User name, and Signon TSS Options panels.

SIGNOFF

The SIGNOFF keyword displays values that are specified on the Signoff Defaults and Signoff TSS Options panels.

TIMEOUT

The TIMEOUT keyword displays values that are specified on the Timeout Options by Terminal Type panel.

TIMER

The TIMER keyword displays the scan interval values for IMS statistics gathering and for exiting inactive conversations, and the number of DEADQ entries to dequeue automatically at IMS checkpoint time.

TSS

The TSS keyword displays values that are specified on the TSS Defaults panel.

UNSOLOUT

The UNSOLOUT keyword displays values that are specified on the Unsolicited Output Defaults and Unsolicited Output TSS Options panels.

USER

The USER keyword allows you to determine where certain ETA and IMS values were derived for a specific user or for all users. The following values are displayed:

- ALOT elimination
- MFS test
- User name
- DFS3649
- DFS3650
- Response mode
- Message delete (MSGDEL)
- Automatic logoff (ALOT)
- Automatic signoff (ASOT)

**/DISplay ETA STATUS**

The STATUS keyword displays a multi-line summary of the dynamic terminals and users that are connected to the IMS system, and statistics on activity since the last IMS restart.

The following figure shows sample output for the **/DISplay ETA STATUS** command.

---

**Note**

Following an IMS emergency restart, the SINCE RESTART values will only be accurate up to the last IMS checkpoint that was taken before the abend.

![Figure 92: /DISplay ETA STATUS Sample Output](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CURRENT BLOCK COUNT</th>
<th>DYNAMIC TERMINALS: 1</th>
<th>DYNAMIC USERS: 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVITY SINCE 2000334/132533 SINCE RESTART</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGONS 1 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGNONS 1 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOLOGOFFS 2 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOSIGNOFFS 0 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOSIGNONS 0 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOLOGONS 0 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/EXIT HELD CONVS 0 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/EXIT ACTIVE CONVS 0 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DEQ DEADQ USERS 0 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**/DISplay ETA USER**

With the USER keyword, you can display the following information about users:

- User name
- ASOT values
- Descriptor used to create the user and associated LTERM s
- MSGDEL values
- Response mode values
- Status
- Node name
User ID

You must specify a parameter with the USER keyword to execute the `/DISPLAY ETA USER` command. The following parameters determine the users for which ETA will display information:

`username`

The `username` parameter displays information about one or more specific users. When specifying multiple users, separate the user names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISPLAY ETA USER username` command. In this sample, the user name is L31EL1.

**Figure 93: `/DISPLAY ETA USER username` Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>MSGDEL</th>
<th>RESPMODE</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>USERID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L31EL1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>C491</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>LU=ETAC1000</td>
<td>DESC=</td>
<td></td>
<td>MODETBL=</td>
<td>ISC=</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94229/133156</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HEX**

This parameter displays the following additional information:

- BCB HDR information
- SPQB data for the user (if the data exists)
- CNT data for the first LTERM that is associated with the user

This parameter is provided for use in problem resolution and is not required. It displays information for only one node, in dump format.

**ALL**

The ALL parameter displays information for all users that exist in the IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISPLAY ETA USER ALL` command.

**Figure 94: `/DISPLAY ETA USER ALL` Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>DESC</th>
<th>MSGDEL</th>
<th>RESPMODE</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>USERID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L31EM3</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>C491</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EL3</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>C491</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EK3</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>C491</td>
<td>GCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L31EL1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>DFSUSER</td>
<td>SYSINFO</td>
<td>TRANRESP</td>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>C490</td>
<td>LLM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94229/133333</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 8 ETA Keywords That Enhance IMS Commands 275
/DISPLAY ETA DATA xxx DLI

Use the DATA keyword with the DLI keyword to display storage in the DLI/SAS region.

Issue the following command:

/DIS ETA DATA xxx DLI

If you want to limit the number of lines displayed, you can issue the command with the following additional, optional parameter (yyy):

/DIS ETA DATA xxx DLI yyy

For the display storage command:

- xxx is the storage address.

- yyy is an additional, optional parameter that limits the number of lines displayed. The maximum value is 999.

The DLI keyword switches the command to run under the DLI TCB.

The following sample command will display storage in DLI/SAS for the specified storage address:

/DIS ETA DATA 0004D008 DLI

The following figure provides a sample of the output that should display.

Figure 95: /DISplay ETA DATA 0004D008 DLI Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS Display -</td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0008 +0000 47FOF22 1CC4C652 C4D7C4D4 F060F1F0 *</td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0018 +0010 F1F060F1 F161FOF6 61FOF660 F1F34BF2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00..DFSDPDM0.10* D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0028 +0020 F90090EC 000C18CF 5B0D0800 41A01000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>9.............</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0038 +0030 5B0A1D4 1BF50F0 A4309108 A3024710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>....N...&amp;Ou.J.t....</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D048 +0040 C5E45820 C8141B36 130858F0 85C405EF *EU..H......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0...* D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D058 +0050 12FF4780 C06659F0 C8B04780 C58E59F0 *.......0H...E..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>...M...&amp;0u.j.t...</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D068 +0060 C844780 C0761874 50370100 4FE0C6FC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H...........&amp;...F.</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D078 +0070 1BF4780 C7961B11 18221B33 18551999 *...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>060..........* D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D088 +0080 5870428 18879110 702047E0 COA00503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*.......qJ...........N. * D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D098 +0090 705CC8A8 4770C180 BFF70668 4770C180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>..Hy...A........A.</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0A8 +00A0 D5017036 C8A84770 C1809102 70214780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>N...Hy...A.......</em> D10P</td>
<td></td>
<td>DFS0001</td>
<td>0004D0B8 +00B0 C0CE4870 70181277 4780C0CC 58F0C8B8 *.............</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To display all CDE entries under DLI/SAS, specify the ALLCDE keyword along with the DLI keyword.

For each CDE entry, the following items will be displayed:

- CDE name
- Module EP
- Module use count
- Module subpool

The following sample command will display all CDE entries under DLI/SAS:

```
/DIS ETA DATA CDE ALLCDE DLI
```

The following figure provides a sample of the output that should display.

**Figure 96: /DISplay ETA DATA CDE ALLCDE DLI Sample Output**

```
DFS0001 EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS Display - CDE(ALLCDE)          D10P
DFS0001 CDE format -> CDNAME/CDENTPT/CDUSE/CDSP                      D10P
DFS0001 CSSQ2ECB/35C1D000/01/E7 DFSABND0/BE111000/01/FA             D10P
DFS0001 DFSACBIO/0007BC00/01/FA DFSAMEE1/39D01A8/01/E7               D10P
DFS0001 DFSBFSPP/3F3EA000/01/FA DFSCHLY0/000AF1E0/01/E7              D10P
DFS0001 DFSCHSSW/000399C0/01/FA DFSCHS00/BE110000/01/F1             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDBA00/0007BC00/01/FA DFSDB000/0001C000/01/FA             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDCAP0/BF104400/01/FA DFSDCF0/000AF1E0/01/F1               D10P
DFS0001 DFSDCF0/0009D8E8/01/F1 DFSDDL000/00034400/01/F1             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDDL1R/3F405000/01/FA DFSDDLWK/00088870/01/E7             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDELVR/0003F000/01/FA DFSDELOV/0002D128/01/FA             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDEL000/000E0000/01/FA DFSDELTR/0078DS5/01/E7             D10P
DFS0001 DFSDEMAW0/FF79A880/01/E6 DFSDEMBRS/DF3FC000/01/F1           D10P
```

The following sample command will display the entire CDE entry for an individual CDE:

```
/DIS ETA DATA CDE DFSDMBRS DLI
```

The following figure provides a sample of the output that should display.

**Figure 97: /DISplay ETA DATA CDE DFSDMBRS DLI Sample Output**

```
DFS0001 EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS Display - CDE(DFSDMBRS)        D10P
```
The `/DISplay EUO` command displays information for each LTERM for which the `/ASSign LTERM ltermname EUO nodename` command has been issued.

The following information is provided for each LTERM:

- Node to which the LTERM is or will be directed
- LOGON descriptor used to autologon the node
- VTAM MODETBL name
- ISC ID that is specified during autologon (LOGONID)

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay EUO` command.

**Figure 98: /DISplay EUO Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTOR</th>
<th>MODETBL</th>
<th>LOGONID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LTRM111</td>
<td>L3A4X2</td>
<td>DFSSLU1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTRM333</td>
<td>L31EF2</td>
<td>DFS327P</td>
<td>SCS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>94231/085212</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use the following parameter with the `/DISplay EUO` command:

`ltermname`

The `ltermname` parameter displays information for one or more specific dynamic LTERMs. When specifying multiple LTERMs, separate the LTERM names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay EUO ltermname` command. In this sample, the LTERM name is LTRM222.

**Figure 99: /DISplay EUO ltermname Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LTERM</th>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTOR</th>
<th>MODETBL</th>
<th>LOGONID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LTRM222</td>
<td>L3A4V1</td>
<td>DFSSLU1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>94231/085420</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DISplay LOGON Keywords and Parameters

After you issue the ETA enhanced /SECURE command, use the /DISplay LOGON command to display information about logon capabilities for IMS systems.

See “/SECURE Command” on page 286 for information about ETA enhancements to the /SECURE command.

You can use the following keywords and parameters with the /DISplay LOGON command:

ALLOWED

When used without the nodename parameter, the /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED command displays a list of all nodes that are allowed to log on to an IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED command. Output similar to this sample is produced if each of the following conditions exist:

- The ETA /SECURE DISABLE LOGON command prevents logons
- The /SECURE ALLOW LOGON nodename command allows two nodes (in this case, L315A4 and L315A5) to log on

Figure 100: /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED Sample Output

L315A5    L315A4
*94084/133652*

The following parameter limits the display to specific node names:

nodename

The nodename parameter verifies that the /SECURE ALLOW LOGON command has been issued to allow one or more specific terminals to log on to the IMS system, even though the logon is globally disabled. When specifying multiple terminals, separate the node names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED * is invalid.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED nodename command. In this sample, the node name is L315A4.

Figure 101: /DISplay LOGON ALLOWED nodename Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NODE</th>
<th>LOGON</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L315A4</td>
<td>LOGON</td>
<td>IS ALLOWED BY L315A4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94084/134023</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When used without the `nodename` parameter, the `/DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED` command displays a list of all nodes that are prevented from logging on to an IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED` command. Output similar to this sample is produced if each of the following conditions exist:

- the ETA `/SECURE DISABLE LOGON` command prevents logons
- the `/SECURE DISABLE LOGON nodename` command prevents two nodes (in this case, L315A4 and L315A5) from logging on

**Figure 102: /DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED Sample Output**

```
L315A5    L315A4
*94084/133652*
```

The following parameter limits the display of nodes that are prevented from logging on to an IMS system:

`nodename`

The `nodename` parameter verifies that the `/SECURE DISABLE LOGON` command has been issued to prevent one or more specific terminals from logging on to the IMS system, even though logon is not globally disabled. When specifying multiple terminals, separate the node names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but `/DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED *` is invalid.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED nodename` command. In this sample, the node name is L315A4.

**Figure 103: /DISPLAY LOGON DISABLED nodename Sample Output**

```
NODE      LOGON  STATUS
L315A4    LOGON  IS DISABLED BY L315A4
*94084/134023*
```

The `STATUS` keyword determines whether logons have been prevented through the ETA `/SECURE DISABLE LOGON` command.
The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY LOGON STATUS command if the ETA /SECURE DISABLE LOGON nodename command prevents specific terminals from logging on.

**Figure 104: /DISPLAY LOGON STATUS Sample Output, Logons Disabled**

```
LOGONS ARE SELECTIVELY DISABLED
*97091/182819*
```

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY LOGON STATUS command if the ETA /SECURE DISABLE LOGON command does not prevent logons.

**Figure 105: /DISPLAY LOGON STATUS Sample Output, Logons Enabled**

```
LOGONS ARE ENABLED
*94084/113552*
```

### /DISPLAY SIGNON Keywords and Parameters

After you issue the ETA enhanced /SECURE command, use the /DISPLAY SIGNON command to display information about signon capabilities for IMS systems.

See “/SECURE Command” on page 286 for information on ETA enhancements to the /SECURE command.

You can use the following keywords with the /DISPLAY SIGNON command. You must specify one of the keywords to execute the command. The parameter is not required.

**ALLOWED**

When used without the *userid* parameter, the /DISPLAY SIGNON ALLOWED command displays a list of all user IDs that are allowed to sign on to an IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY SIGNON ALLOWED command. Output similar to this sample is produced if each of the following conditions exist:

- the ETA /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON command prevents signons
- the ETA /SECURE ALLOW SIGNON *userid* command allows two user IDs (in this case, BTS1 and CTS1) to sign on

**Figure 106: /DISPLAY SIGNON ALLOWED Sample Output**

```
BTS1     CTS1
*94084/133652*
```

The following parameter limits the display to specific user IDs:
**userid**

The *userid* parameter verifies that the `/SECURE SIGNON ALLOW` command has been issued to allow one or more specific user IDs to sign on to the IMS system, even though the `/SECURE DISABLE SIGNON` command is in effect. When specifying multiple user IDs, separate the user IDs with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but `/DISplay SIGNON ALLOWED *` is invalid.

The following figure shows output for the `/DISplay SIGNON ALLOWED userid` command. In this sample, the user ID is CTS1.

**Figure 107: /DISplay SIGNON ALLOWED userid Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USERID</th>
<th>SIGNON STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTS1</td>
<td>SIGNON IS ALLOWED BY CTS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>94084/134908</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISABLED**

When used without the *userid* parameter, the `/DISplay SIGNON DISABLED` command displays a list of all users that are prevented from signing on to an IMS system.

The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay SIGNON DISABLED` command. Output similar to this sample is produced if each of the following conditions exist:

- The ETA `/SECURE DISABLE SIGNON` command prevents signons
- The `/SECURE DISABLE SIGNON userid` command prevents two user IDs (in this case, BTS1 and CTS1) from signing on

**Figure 108: /DISplay SIGNON DISABLED Sample Output**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USERID</th>
<th>SIGNON STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BTS1</td>
<td><em>94084/133652</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following parameter limits the display of user IDs that are prevented from signing on to an IMS system:

**userid**

The *userid* parameter verifies that the `/SECURE DISABLE SIGNON` command has been issued to prevent one or more specific users from signing on to the IMS system, even though the signon is globally enabled. When specifying users, separate the user IDs with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but `/DISplay SIGNON DISABLED *` is invalid.
The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay SIGNON DISABLED userid command. In this sample, the user ID is CTS1.

**Figure 109: /DISplay SIGNON DISABLED userid Sample Output**

```
USERID  SIGNON  STATUS
CTS1    SIGNON  IS DISABLED BY CTS1
*94084/134023*
```

**STATUS**

Use the /DISplay SIGNON STATUS command to determine whether signons have been prevented through the /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON command.

This command produces output that is similar to the sample output that is shown in “Figure 110” on page 283 or Figure 111 on page 283. The output that is shown in “Figure 111” on page 283 is produced if specific users are not allowed to sign on through the ETA /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON userid command.

**Figure 110: /DISplay SIGNON STATUS Sample Output, Signons Disabled**

```
SIGNONS ARE SELECTIVELY DISABLED
*97091/182820*
```

The output that is shown in the following figure is produced if signons are not prevented through the ETA /SECURE DISABLE SIGNON command.

**Figure 111: /DISplay SIGNON STATUS Sample Output, Signons Enabled**

```
SIGNONS ARE ENABLED
*97091/125811*
```

### /DISplay TSSTABLE Keywords and Parameters

The /DISplay TSSTABLE command displays information about TSS tables that exist on an IMS system.

See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information about TSS tables.

You can use the following keywords with the /DISplay TSSTABLE command. You must specify the LIST or tablename keyword to execute the command.

**LIST**

Use the LIST keyword to display the following information for all TSS tables that exist in the IMS system:

- TSS table name
- Argument and result lengths
- Masking status (whether TSS wildcard characters can be used)
- The TSS table type
- Name of the translate assist exit (if an exit exists)

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISPLAY TSSTABLE LIST command.

**Figure 112: /DISPLAY TSSTABLE LIST Sample Output**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TSS TABLE NAME LIST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETAUNSOL ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E49NODE ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E50TYPE ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNODE ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTYPE ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGNON ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ULTERM ARG LEN= 11 RSLT LEN=30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**tablename**

The function of the `tablename` keyword depends on an option that you can specify on the ETA TSS Options panel and on the parameter that you use with the keyword.

If you have activated the Assume ALLROWS option on the ETA TSS Options panel, the /DISPLAY TSSTABLE `tablename` command, when used without additional parameters, displays information about the argument and result for every row of the specified TSS table. Output is similar to the previous or the following figure, depending on the length of the result.

If you have not activated the Assume ALLROWS option, the /DISPLAY TSSTABLE `tablename` command will fail if issued without additional parameters.

**Figure 113: /DISPLAY TSSTABLE `tablename` Sample Output (Format 1)**

```
TSS TABLE DISPLAY FOR TABLE LOGONTYP
LOGONTYP ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN= 60 MASKING=YES TYPE=LOGONTYP EXIT=NO EXIT
TSS TABLE DISPLAY RETURNED 7 DATA ENTRIES
ARGUMENT RESULT
SLUP**** ETASLUP
SLU1**** ETASLU1
SLU222  DFSSLU2 182 182  2
SLU223  DFSSLU2 183 183  2
SLU224  DFSSLU2 184 184  2
SLU225  DFSSLU2 185 185  5
SLU2**** DFSSLU2 186 186  2
*95137/094841*
```

**Figure 114: /DISPLAY TSSTABLE `tablename` Sample Output (Format 2)**

```
TSS TABLE DISPLAY FOR TABLE ETAUNSOL
ETAUNSOL ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=152 MASKING=YES TYPE=UNSOLOUT EXIT=NO EXIT
```
You can use the following parameters to perform other functions with the /DISplay TSSTABLE tablename command:

ALLROWS

If you have not activated the Assume ALLROWS option on the ETA TSS Options panel, use the ALLROWS parameter to display a list of all rows in the specified TSS table. Output is similar to “Figure 114” on page 284 or “Figure 115” on page 285, depending on the length of the result.

If you have activated the Assume ALLROWS option on the ETA TSS Options panel, the ALLROWS parameter is not required.

The ALLROWS parameter displays a list of all rows in the specified TSS table.

INFO

The INFO parameter displays the information that is available through the /DISplay TSSTABLE LIST command for a specific TSS table.

The following figure shows sample output for the /DISplay TSSTABLE tablename INFO command. In this sample, the table name is ETAUNSOL.

Figure 115: /DISplay TSSTABLE tablename INFO Sample Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TSS TABLE DISPLAY FOR TABLE ETAUNSOL</th>
<th>ETAUNSOL ARG LEN=  8 RSLT LEN=152 MASKING=YES TYPE=UNSOLOUT EXIT=NO EXIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>94084/131126</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

tableargument

Use the tableargument parameter to display argument and result rows that correspond to an argument that you specify. If the TSS table allows masking, this command may display more than one TSS table row. See the following figure for sample output.

You can use this parameter to determine whether new or modified table arguments are available to an IMS control region. If a specified argument and result pair is found in the TSS table data that is available to an IMS control region, a TSS refresh is not required.
The following figure shows sample output for the `/DISplay TSSTABLE `tablename `tableargument` command. In this sample, the table name is ETAUNSOL and the argument is UNK0000A.

**Figure 116: /DISplay TSSTABLE tablename tableargument Sample Output**

TSS TABLE DISPLAY FOR TABLE ETAUNSOL  
ETAUNSOL ARG LEN= 8 RSLT LEN=152 MASKING=YES TYPE=UNSOLOUT EXIT=NO EXIT  
ARG=UNK0000A  
FNC=UNKUSR0A12U 0010TRANRESPSYSINFO N  
DST 1 UNKDST 2 UNKDST 3 UNKDST 4 UNKDST 5 UNKDST 6 UNKDST 7  
*94084/131337*

**/SECURE Command**

The ETA enhanced `/SECURE` command allows you to selectively restrict logon and signon access to your IMS systems.

You can issue the ETA enhanced `/SECURE` command from an IMS terminal that has the necessary security authority or through an IMS AOI application program.

**Syntax Diagram_4**

The following figure shows the syntax, keywords, and parameters for the `/SECURE` command. Keywords and parameters are presented alphabetically. Abbreviations appear in uppercase.

**Figure 117: SECURE Command Syntax**

You must specify one of the ALLOW, CLEAR, DISABLE, or ENABLE keywords to execute the `/SECURE` command. The LOGON or SIGNON keyword must follow each of these keywords.
Use the /SECure DISABLE command to prohibit logon or signon globally or selectively. To prohibit logon or signon globally, do not specify a nodename or userid.

To allow logon or signon selectively during a global prohibition, use the /SECure ALLOW command. You may issue the /SECure DISABLE and the /SECure ALLOW commands in any order, but the /SECure ALLOW command has no effect until you issue the /SECure DISABLE command.

Use the /SECure CLEAR command to reverse the effects of a /SECure ALLOW command. To reverse a global prohibition, enter the /SECure ENABLE command without a nodename or userid.

To prohibit logon or signon selectively, specify a nodename or userid with the /SECure DISABLE command. To reverse the effects of a selective prohibition, enter the /SECure ENABLE command with a nodename or userid specified.

If you have prohibited logon or signon both globally and selectively, the /SECure ALLOW command will override any selective prohibitions, as well as the global prohibition.

/SECure ALLOW Keywords and Parameters

If you issue the /SECure DISABLE command to prohibit logon or signon globally, use the /SECure ALLOW command to allow specific terminals and users to log on or sign on to IMS.

The LOGON or SIGNON keyword must follow /SECure ALLOW.

Note

The /SECure ALLOW command has no effect until you issue the /SECure DISABLE command without a nodename or userid specified.

After you issue either of the following commands, IMS returns a DFS058I message to indicate that the command completed successfully. If some parts of the command cannot be completed, the DFS058I will list the exceptions.

LOGON

Use the LOGON keyword and the nodename parameter to specify one or more nodes that will be allowed to log on to IMS. When specifying multiple
node names, separate the node names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but `/SECure ALLOW LOGON *` is invalid.

**SIGNON**

Use the SIGNON keyword and the `userid` parameter to specify one or more user IDs that will be allowed to sign on to IMS. When specifying multiple user IDs, separate the user IDs with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but `/SECure ALLOW SIGNON *` is invalid.

**WARNING**
The SIGNON keyword does not apply to dynamic SLUP devices.

### /SECure CLEAR Keywords and Parameters

Use the `/SECure CLEAR` command to cancel the effect of the `/SECure ALLOW` command for specific terminals and users. The LOGON or SIGNON keyword must follow `/SECure CLEAR`. The following example shows how you can use this command:

1. Use the `/SECure DISABLE` command without specifying a `nodename` or `userid` to globally restrict access to an IMS system.

2. Use the `/SECure ALLOW` command to grant specific terminals and users access to IMS.

3. When specific terminals and users no longer require access to IMS, issue the `/SECure CLEAR` command to cancel their access.

The specified terminals and users will not be able to log on or sign on to IMS until you issue the `/SECure ENABLE` command (without specifying a `nodename` or `userid`), or until you reissue the `/SECure ALLOW` command.

**Note**
The `/SECure CLEAR` command has no effect if you have not issued the `/SECure ALLOW` command.

After you issue either of the following commands, IMS returns a DFS058I message to indicate that the command completed successfully. If some parts of the command cannot be completed, the DFS058I will list the exceptions.

**LOGON**

Use the LOGON keyword and the `nodename` parameter to specify one or more nodes that will no longer be allowed to log on to IMS. After you issue
this command, the specified node(s) will not be allowed to log on to IMS because the /SECure DISABLE LOGON command will again be in effect for those nodes. When specifying multiple node names, separate the node names with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but /SECure CLEAR LOGON * is invalid.

SIGNON

Use the SIGNON keyword and the userid parameter to specify one or more user IDs that will no longer be allowed to sign on to IMS. After you issue this command, the specified user ID(s) will not be allowed to sign on to IMS because the /SECure DISABLE SIGNON command will again be in effect for those user IDs. When specifying multiple user IDs, separate the user IDs with spaces. Generic parameters are supported, but /SECure CLEAR SIGNON * is invalid.

WARNING

The SIGNON keyword does not apply to dynamic SLUP devices.

/SECure DISABLE Keywords and Parameters

Use the /SECure DISABLE command to globally prohibit logon or signon or to prohibit specific terminals from logging on or specific users from signing on to an IMS system. The LOGON or SIGNON keyword must follow /SECure DISABLE.

The /SECure ENABLE command cancels the /SECure DISABLE command. See “/SECure ENABLE Keywords and Parameters” on page 290 for information. See “/SECure ALLOW Keywords and Parameters” on page 287 to partially enable logons and signons when they are globally disabled.

After you issue either of the following commands, IMS returns a DFS058I message to indicate that the command completed successfully. If some parts of the command cannot be completed, the DFS058I will list the exceptions.

LOGON

Use the /SECure DISABLE LOGON command without the nodename parameter to prevent all nodes from logging on to the IMS system. You can issue the /SECure ALLOW LOGON nodename command before or after the /SECure DISABLE LOGON command to allow specific nodes to log on. Use the /SECure DISABLE LOGON nodename command to prevent specific node names from logging on.
SIGNON

Use the /SECure DISABLE SIGNON command without the *userid* parameter to prevent all signons on the IMS system. You can issue the /SECure ALLOW SIGNON *userid* command before or after the /SECure DISABLE SIGNON command to allow specific users to sign on. Use the /SECure DISABLE SIGNON *userid* command to prevent specific users from signing on.

**WARNING**
The SIGNON keyword does not apply to dynamic SLUP devices.

/SECure ENABLE Keywords and Parameters

Use the /SECure ENABLE command to cancel the effect of the /SECure DISABLE command.

See “/SECure DISABLE Keywords and Parameters” on page 289 for information. The LOGON or SIGNON keyword must follow /SECure ENABLE.

After you issue either of the following commands, IMS returns a DFS058I message to indicate that the command completed successfully. If some parts of the command cannot be completed, the DFS058I will list the exceptions.

LOGON

Use the /SECure ENABLE LOGON command without the nodename parameter to cancel the /SECure DISABLE LOGON command and to allow *all* nodes to log on to the IMS system. Use the /SECure ENABLE LOGON *nodename* command to allow specific nodes to log on.

SIGNON

Use the /SECure ENABLE SIGNON command without the *userid* parameter to cancel the /SECure DISABLE SIGNON command and to allow *all* user IDs to sign on to the IMS system. Use the /SECure ENABLE SIGNON *userid* command to allow specific user IDs to sign on.

**WARNING**
The SIGNON keyword does not apply to dynamic SLUP devices.
This chapter provides information and instructions on using the administration, utility, and diagnostic features that are available with EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA). You can use these features to maintain ETA and your IMS systems.

Administration Features

This section contains information about the following features:

- ETA global options
- ETA internal product security through user access profiles
- IMS control region storage display and zap features
- ETA product authorization
- Modification of ETA messages and signon return code text
- Enhanced Command Security
- BMCXLINK considerations

Global Options

ETA global options are included in the administration features only so that you can view the settings that are used on your IMS systems.

BMC recommends that you set the global options only when you install ETA. Changing global options after installation could cause unintended changes to ETA internal product security, or could deactivate the BMCXLINK feature that connects
the ETA online interface with the IMS control region. See the installation guide for information about global options.

**Internal Security through User Access Profiles**

Access to ETA is unlimited unless you create ETA user profiles to restrict the use of ETA. Only users with ETA administrator authority can create or modify user profiles. When ETA is first installed, all users have administrator authority unless you use job ETA#UIDL to create a list of user IDs that have administrator authority, or unless you use job ETA#RSCL to establish administrator authority through RACF.

If you have administrator authority, you can create and modify user access profiles to define a TSO user’s level of authority to use ETA by IMSID. The same user may have different capabilities, depending on the IMSID chosen. ETA allows you to specify generic user IDs or IMSIDs that allow multiple user IDs to access one IMSID or one user access profile to apply to multiple IMSIDs.

**Storage Display and Zap Features**

You can use ETA to display main storage in the IMS control region address space. A TSO screen displays portions of main storage in the IMS control region address space in a dump format that shows the following attributes in 16-byte increments:

- Virtual storage address of the data
- Offset relative to the beginning of the area
- Hexadecimal representation
- EBCDIC character display

The entire block of storage that you specify is copied from the IMS address space to your TSO address space.

When the storage is displayed, you can use the hexadecimal or EBCDIC character display fields to modify the storage, and then you can use the ZAP command to apply the changes.
WARNING
Zapping storage can be extremely dangerous on a production system. For this reason, the ability to zap storage is disabled by default; you can enable it for authorized personnel when necessary. See “Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options” on page 44 for instructions on enabling the storage display and zap features for a given IMS. See “Utility Features” on page 322 for information and instructions on adding user access authorization for these features when they are enabled for the target IMS.

Dump Formats

You can specify the following dump formats on the ETA IMS Storage Display panel:

- ASU(autosignon_RACF_userid)
- CDE(modulename)
- CIB(terminalname) or CIB(line-pter m)
- CLB(terminalname) or CLB(line-pter m)
- CLBE(nodename)
- CNT(ltermname)
- CSS(sourcename)
- CSU(userid)
- CTB(terminalname) or CTB(line-pter m)
- DDIR(databasename)
- DESC(lu62descriptorname)
- DNT(ltermname) or DNT(username)
- ECD—for the ETA system contents directory
- FIND(modulename.csectname)
- LGND(logon descriptorname)
- LOAD(loadmodulename)
- MOD(modulename)
If you specify an address, you can use any of the following attributes to modify it:

- `?` — to specify a 31-bit display instead of the standard 24-bit display
- `%` — to specify that ETA display the storage indicated by a pointer
- `+nn` — to specify that ETA display the storage `nn` bytes after the address
- `-nn` — to specify that ETA display the storage `nn` bytes before the address

where `nn` is a hexadecimal number.

**Dump Length**

If ETA can determine a length for a storage block and the length does not exceed 9,999 bytes, ETA displays the entire storage block—you do not need to specify a number of bytes in the **Length** field on the ETA IMS Storage Display panel.

ETA can typically determine lengths for known control blocks and modules if the address is not complex. If the address is explicit or complex, ETA defaults the length to 256 bytes unless you specify a decimal length in the **Length** field.

To view only a certain number of bytes from the storage block, type a decimal value in the **Length** field on the ETA IMS Storage Display panel.
If you type 9999 in the Length field, ETA displays the entire storage block, regardless of its length.

**WARNING**
Use the value 9999 with care. Very large load modules (such as DFSVNUC0) can exceed the virtual storage that is available in the TSO user’s address space and can cause an S80A abend of the ETA TSO session.

You can also use ETA to display main storage in the IMS DLI/SAS region address space. When displaying main storage, you can complete the following tasks under the DLI TCB:

- Dump all CDEs
- Display storage
- Zap storage
- Display an individual CDE

The following figure provides an example of dumping all CDEs under the DLI TCB.

**Figure 118: Dumping All CDEs**

```
Address Offset  +0  +4  +8  +C  Character
00000000 0000  C6D4E360 6E40C3C4 D5C1D4C5 61C3C4C5 *FMT-> CDNAME/CDE*
00000010 0010  D5E3D7E3 61C3C4E4 E2C561C3 C4E2D740 *NTPT/CDUSE/CDSP *
00000020 0020  C3E2E2D8 F2C5C3C2 35C10000 0001E700 *CSSQ2ECB.A}...X.*
00000030 0030  C4C6E2C1 C2D5E4C0 BF110000 0001FA00 *DFSABND0...........
00000040 0040  C4C6E2C1 C3C2C9D6 00078000 0001FB00 *DFSCBIO...........
00000050 0050  C4C6E2C1 E6C5C5F1 39D81AD8 0001E700 *DFSAWEE1.Q.Q..X.*
00000060 0060  C4C6E2C2 C6E2D7D7 3F3EA000 0001FB00 *DFSBFSPP...........
00000070 0070  C4C6E2C3 D7E8F0F0 B00AF1E0 0001E700 *DFSCPYOO..\X.*
00000080 0080  C4C6E2C3 E2E2E6D2 00039C0 0001FA00 *DFSCSSWK...(....
00000090 0090  C4C6E2C3 E2E2F0F0 BF170000 0001FA00 *DFSCSS00..0.....
000000A0 00A0  C4C6E2C4 C2C1E4F0 00067000 0001FA00 *DFSDBAU0........
```

The following figure provides an example of displaying storage under the DLI TCB.

**Figure 119: Displaying Storage**

```
Address Offset  +0  +4  +8  +C  Character
00000000 0000  C6D4E360 6E40C3C4 D5C1D4C5 61C3C4C5 *FMT-> CDNAME/CDE*
00000010 0010  D5E3D7E3 61C3C4E4 E2C561C3 C4E2D740 *NTPT/CDUSE/CDSP *
00000020 0020  C3E2E2D8 F2C5C3C2 35C10000 0001E700 *CSSQ2ECB.A}...X.*
00000030 0030  C4C6E2C1 C2D5E4C0 BF110000 0001FA00 *DFSABND0...........
00000040 0040  C4C6E2C1 C3C2C9D6 00078000 0001FB00 *DFSCBIO...........
00000050 0050  C4C6E2C1 E6C5C5F1 39D81AD8 0001E700 *DFSAWEE1.Q.Q..X.*
00000060 0060  C4C6E2C2 C6E2D7D7 3F3EA000 0001FB00 *DFSBFSPP...........
00000070 0070  C4C6E2C3 D7E8F0F0 B00AF1E0 0001E700 *DFSCPYOO..\X.*
00000080 0080  C4C6E2C3 E2E2E6D2 00039C0 0001FA00 *DFSCSSWK...(....
00000090 0090  C4C6E2C3 E2E2F0F0 BF170000 0001FA00 *DFSCSS00..0.....
000000A0 00A0  C4C6E2C4 C2C1E4F0 00067000 0001FA00 *DFSDBAU0........
```
The following figure provides an example of zapping storage under the DLI TCB.

**Figure 120: Zapping Storage**

The following figure provides an example of displaying an individual CDE under the DLI TCB. This example uses a CDE for DFSPSEL0.

**Figure 121: Displaying an Individual CDE**
Product Authorization

ETA provides online and batch features for installing the CPU ID passwords that authorize ETA for use on a CPU. See the installation guide for instructions on using the online product authorization feature.

See “Batch Features and ETA Macros” on page 411 for information about performing product authorization in batch.

Message Creation and Modification

On IMS systems that use ETA, the standard IMS signon return codes are replaced with more meaningful messages that explain the return codes that are issued with the messages.

ETA also provides a message editor that allows you to change messages as follows:

- Modify signon error message return code text
- Modify ETA error messages that end-users may see
- Create messages that replace the DFS3649A, DFS3650I, or DFS2467I formats

Enhanced Command Security

The Enhanced Command Security feature allows you to implement IMS command security within the IMS control region or the DCCTL region by command name and the first keyword within the command.

Before you can use Enhanced Command Security in the IMS control region, you must:

- Define the RACF class(es) that Enhanced Command Security requires
  See “Defining RACF Classes” on page 298 for information on defining these classes.
- Tailor the Enhanced Command Security IMSID options
  See Enhanced Command Security The Enhanced Command Security feature allows you to implement IMS command security within the IMS control region or the DCCTL region by command name and the first keyword within the command. for information on tailoring these IMSID options.
Create access profiles for IMS commands that are to be protected
See “Creating Access Profiles” on page 299 for information on creating profiles for IMS commands.

Revise the default Command Processing table and tailor it to your site-specific needs, if required
See “Defining Command Processing Tables” on page 300 and “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317 for information about tailoring the default Command Processing table.

Defining RACF Classes

Depending on your security needs, one or two new RACF classes will be required. If you want to group commands, two new classes are required. If you do not want to group commands, only one new class is required.

Group Commands
The grouping method is a RACF concept that allows you to define one or more commands in a group and grant the same level of access to all of the commands.

The two classes that are required to group commands must be defined to RACF in the resource class descriptor table (CDT) and the RACF router table. Definition in the CDT is accomplished through the RACF resource class macro, ICHERCDE. Definition in the RACF router table is accomplished through the ICHRFRTB macro.

See the IBM manual, Z/OS Security Server RACF Macros and Interface, for details on these macros.

If you want to group commands, use the macros that are shown in the following figure as a sample for defining the necessary classes to the CDT.

Figure 122: Sample Macros for Defining Classes to CDT when Commands are Grouped

```
ETA#CIMS ICHERCDE CLASS=class1, <-site defined
    ID=nnn,        <-site defined
    POSIT=nn,      <-site defined
    GROUP=class2,  <-site defined
    MAXLTH=246,
    RACLIST=ALLOWED,
    FIRST=ANY,
    OTHER=ANY
ETA#DIMS ICHERCDE CLASS=class2, <-site defined
    ID=nnn,        <-site defined
    POSIT=nn,      <-site defined
    MEMBER=class1, <-site defined
    MAXLTH=246,
    RACLIST=ALLOWED,
    FIRST=ANY,
    OTHER=ANY
```

Do Not Group Commands
If you do not want to group commands, only one class is required.
Use the macro that is shown in the following figure as a sample for defining the necessary class to the CDT.

**Figure 123: Sample Macro for Defining Classes to CDT when Commands are Not Grouped**

```plaintext
ETA#CIMS ICHERCDE CLASS=class1, <--site defined
   ID=nnn,          <--site defined
   POSIT=nn,        <--site defined
   MAXLNTH=246,
   RACLIST=ALLOWED,
   FIRST=ANY,
   OTHER=ANY
```

**Creating Access Profiles**

Once you define the required RACF classes, you must create RACF access profiles to reflect your site-specific security needs. These profiles represent the command/keyword combinations for any IMS commands to which access is to be controlled.

The profile names have the following format:

`command-abbreviation.keyword-abbreviation`

where:

- **Command-abbreviation** is always the first three characters of the IMS command
- **keyword-abbreviation** is the IMS-defined abbreviation for the keyword, or the complete keyword name if no abbreviation exists

---

**Note**

If you modify the access profiles while IMS is active, you must refresh them before they will be active in your IMS system. You can refresh the access profiles through the ETA ISPF interface (option 6.6.1) or by using online change for RACF.

Because the IMS keyword abbreviations are not always easy to determine, ETA provides a list of all command and keyword abbreviations, and a list of all possible access profile names. You can view these lists from the ETA ISPF interface by accessing the default Command Processing table (option 7.6) or by generating a Command Processing Table report in batch.

For information about generating a report, see “Batch Generation of the Command Processing Table Report” on page 411. ETACNTL member ETA#CSR1 is required to generate the report.
WARNING

The access profile names that you create must match the names that are generated by this option. There is no flexibility in naming access profiles.

Defining Command Processing Tables

In addition to the access profiles, Enhanced Command Security distributes a default Command Processing table named ETALICM0.

This default table contains information about every IMS command and each keyword associated with a command that is a valid first-keyword. The default Command Processing table also includes information which directs Enhanced Command Security to take specific actions for a given command or keyword. This includes the method of securing the command and allowing the ALL parameter and generic parameters.

If the specifications in the default Command Processing table do not meet your site’s command security needs, ETA allows you to create modified Command Processing table(s) through the ETA ISPF interface Administration Menu. You cannot modify the default Command Processing table, ETALICM0. All modified Command Processing tables are saved as ETAZ1xxx, where xxx is a one- to three-character user-defined suffix.

Categories of Command Processing Table Information

The Command Processing table contains information about each IMS command and its associated keywords.

Some of the command and keyword information cannot be modified, and some of the information can be modified.

Command Information

The following non-modifiable information is associated with each command:

- Command name
- Earliest IMS release for which the command is valid
- Whether the command has keywords
- Whether the command is securable by Enhanced Command Security

The following modifiable information is associated with each command:

- Whether the command is allowed from all terminals
- Whether the command is rejected from all terminals
Keyword Information

The following non-modifiable information is associated with each keyword:

- Keyword name (limited to first 10 characters of keyword)
- IMS-defined one- to three-character abbreviation for the keyword, if there is one
- Earliest IMS release for which the keyword is valid
- Whether the keyword allows the ALL parameter
- Whether the keyword allows generic parameters
- Whether the keyword is an IMS-defined keyword or a user/vendor keyword

The following modifiable information is available for each keyword:

- Whether the keyword is allowed from all terminals
- Whether the ALL parameter is allowed for keywords that accept this parameter
- Whether the generic parameters are allowed for keywords that allow generic parameters

Note

When working with Command Processing tables, consider the following issues:

- Because of possible restart problems, the /NRE and /ERE commands cannot be secured with Enhanced Command Security.

- The following commands are not secured in the default Command Processing table, ETALICM0: /FORmat, /RCLdst, and /SIGn. You can secure these commands with Enhanced Command Security, but problems can result if they are secured and cannot be issued by terminals.

- If you modify the access profiles while IMS is active, you must refresh them before they will be active in your IMS system. You can refresh the access profiles through the ETA ISPF interface (option 6.6.1) or by using online change for RACF.

Command Processing Table Function

The Command Processing table serves the following purposes for the Enhanced Command Security feature:

- When an IMS command is entered, ETA performs some basic command and keyword syntax checking via the Command Processing table. If a command is syntactically incorrect, ETA returns a syntax error. Under standard IMS security,
IMS issues a security violation error message when a syntax error is detected. IMS checks for security violations before checking for syntax errors.

- You can use the Command Processing table to direct Enhanced Command Security to take a specific action for a command or command/keyword combination without checking the command access profiles. You can set a specific command or command/keyword combination to allow everyone to enter it or to allow no one to enter it, without checking the command access profiles.

**BMCXLINK Considerations**

Communication from ISPF and batch to the IMS control region(s) is provided through a started task called BMCXLINK. Communications between ISPF, batch, and BMCXLINK use VTAM communications.

Communications between BMCXLINK and the IMS control regions use the cross-system coupling facility (XCF). Therefore, ISPF and BMCXLINK do not have to reside on the same MVS image. This allows a single point of control for systems in an IMSPLEX which allows coordination of changes across the IMSPLEX. BMCXLINK can be started and stopped asynchronously with IMS.

BMCXLINK maintains an internal trace of all important activities. The trace is always active and can be printed on demand. It also appears in SVC dumps. The minimum size of the trace table is 16 K, but this may be expanded if necessary.

As previously stated, communications between ISPF, batch, and the BMCXLINK use VTAM. The BMCXLINK started task specifies a VTAM ACBNAME as parameter data in the JCL. When started, BMCXLINK opens the VTAM ACB and permits logons. BMCXLINK then waits for input from an ISPF or batch user. When input is received, the PLU notifies BMCXLINK and BMCXLINK retrieves the data. BMCXLINK sends the request to the appropriate IMS control region(s) using XCF. When the IMS control region(s) has processed the request, the output is sent back to BMCXLINK using XCF. BMCXLINK processes the information and sends it back to the ISPF or batch user through VTAM communications.

**BMCXLINK Trace**

The BMCXLINK Trace facility enables you to create a dump of the BMCXLINK Trace table on demand by typing nn TRACE to the BMCXLINK outstanding reply, where nn is the number of the outstanding reply.

The trace will also automatically produce a dump whenever BMCXLINK abends. The trace operates continually, using very little overhead.
Starting BMCXLINK

With the use of VTAM and XCF for communications, choosing an MVS image on which to execute the BMCXLINK started task depends on your specific environment and use of ETA.

BMCXLINK does not have to reside on the same MVS image as your TSO users because VTAM is used for BMCXLINK communications with ISPF and batch. If the MVS images where your IMS control regions reside can communicate using XCF, then BMCXLINK does not have to reside on the same MVS image as your IMS control regions. The only restriction for BMCXLINK is if you are using Groups, a single BMCXLINK must be used for all ETA requests against a Group.

After installation and customization are complete, ETA is ready for use. At this point, activate BMCXLINK on the IMS CPU. Sample JCL for this job is distributed in ETACNTL member ETA#LINK.

BMCXLINK can be started before or after the IMS control regions are started. Both BMCXLINK and the IMS control region must be active before any ETA user session may access the IMS system.

Successful initialization of BMCXLINK produces the following messages. Other messages are generated if there are any problems in activating BMCXLINK.

```
*BMCXLINK* ACTIVE (STC=BMCXLINK)
*BMCXLINK* VTAM INTERFACE ACTIVE
```

The reply associated with the first message can be used to communicate with BMCXLINK. It is also possible to communicate with BMCXLINK with the MVS MODIFY command. If desired, BMCXLINK eliminates the outstanding message by replying `nn DEL`. If the reply has been deleted, you must use the MODIFY command for further communications with BMCXLINK.

BMCXLINK honors a special HELP command. Enter this command in response to the BMCXLINK outstanding reply; it produces a display listing of all the commands available to the JES operator.

Terminating BMCXLINK

You can terminate BMCXLINK in three ways:

- Enter the MVS STOP command.
- Reply `nn END` or `nn STOP` to the outstanding reply.
- Reply `END` or `STOP` via the MODIFY command (an alternative to `STOP` is `DUMP`, which produces SYSUDUMP).
 ETA Deactivation for Diagnostic Purposes

To remove ETA from an IMS system for diagnostic purposes, rename the ETA IMSID options module (ETA# iii) and restart the IMS system. In most cases, a warm start will be sufficient; however, depending on the amount of system customization that you have performed with ETA, a cold start may be required.

Executing IMS operator commands online

You can use the ETA Execute IMS Command panel to execute IMS commands. When you issue commands against an IBM IMS control region, responses are displayed on this panel.

You can use this panel to enter multiple IMS commands. Each IMS command must begin with a slash as the first character. You can use multiple commands of any length, separated by semicolons (;). Any IMS command acceptable to the IMS Automated Operator Interface (AOI) is valid for ETA.

**Note**

You must enter type-2 commands without a slash.

You can use the ETA command interface to send commands to one or more IMS control regions simultaneously. If the target of the IMS command is a group, ETA sends the commands to all currently active members of the group. The panel displays the resulting command output from each command returned from all of the specified IMS control regions. ETA writes the commands that you issue to the history file if the **Write IMS Commands to History File** option is selected in the IMSID or group options.

You can use the following optional qualifying commands:

- **WAIT**

  Enter WAIT after a command if you want ETA to pause before issuing the next command:

  ```
  WAIT nnn
  ```

  Replace *nnn* with the number of seconds to pause (any number from 1 through 255).

**Example**

To pause for five seconds between two /DIS commands:

```
/DIS A;WAIT 5;/DIS TRAN PART;
```
RECALL

Use RECALL to populate the command field with the previously entered IMS command or group of commands. Subsequent RECALL commands recall the next previous commands, up to 10. Alternatively, you can click F4 to enter the RECALL command.

You can execute an IMS operator command directly from ETA by selecting option 4 from the ETA Main Menu.

Figure 124: Execute IMS Command panel

Routing IMS Type-2 commands to the IBM Operations Manager (OM) address space

You can route IMS type-2 commands to the IBM Operations Manager (OM) address space and other member components. Additionally, you can route commands directly to IMSPLEX member components like ODBM and IMS Connect.

For sample JCL members and the syntax changes to the IMS Command Batch interface, see the following ETACNTL members:

- ETA#CMD1
- ETA#CMD2

Figure 125: Examples of BATCH commands

IMSCMD IMSPLEX=PLXA,CMD=QRY TRAN NAME(PART) SHOW(ALL)IMSCMD
IMSPLEX=PLXA,ROUTE=IMSA,CMD=QRY TRAN NAME(PART) SHOW (ALL)

You must allocate your IMS RESLIB from within the PRODUCT CLIST to use the target IMSPlex and Route in the IMS Commands ISPF option.

The ETACI@00 CLIST includes example changes that you would make in order to implement this support in ISPF.

For examples of IMPLEX, and ROUTE field implementation, see “Using IMSPLEX and ROUTE TO command fields” on page 306
Using IMSPLEX and ROUTE TO command fields

The following samples demonstrate use of the IMSPLEX and ROUTE TO fields.

**Note**
The IMSPLEX and ROUTE TO fields are present only if the IMS RESLIB data set is allocated to the STEPLIB or TASKLIB through the product CLISTS.

The following sample issues IMS Connect to a specific IMS Connect within the IMSPLEX:

```
ETA                             Execute IMS Command
Command ===> ________________________________________________ Scroll ===> CSR
Target IMSIDs or Groups . . ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Target IMSPlex . . . . . . GFP13 Route to GPF13CON
Enter IMS command(s) below.
*QUERY IMSCON TYPE(CONFIG) SHOW(ALL)

Command result: Line 00000000 Col 001 080
*************************** Top of Data ***************************
IMSPlex: GFP13
Command: QUERY IMSCON TYPE(CONFIG)
SHOW(ALL)
Member: GPF13CON Type: IMSCON
MbrName          CC  Version  IconID    IpAddress        MaxSoc
TimeOut          GPF13CON 0 V13  GPF13CON 172.024.048.133  2000   0
```

The following sample issues a QRY TRAN command to a specific IMS within the IMSPLEX:

```
ETA                             Execute IMS Command
Command ===> ________________________________________________ Scroll ===> CSR
Target IMSIDs or Groups . . ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Target IMSPlex . . . . . . GFP13 Route to GPF13CON
Enter IMS command(s) below.
*QRY TRAN NAME(PART) SHOW(ALL)

Command result: Line 00000000 Col 001 080
*************************** Top of Data ***************************
IMSPlex: GFP13
Command: QRY TRAN NAME(PART)
SHOW(ALL)
Member: GPF3 Type: IMS
Trancode MbrName CC LPSBname LCls LQCnt LLCT LPLCT LPLCTTime LCP
PART GPF3 0 DFSSAM02 1 0 2 65535 6553500
```
Command routing GLOBAL option

If your system is running in a Common Service Layer (CSL) environment, you can specify a GLOBAL option to route IMS commands to the IMS control region. You can activate this option if you want BMCXLINK to route all commands issued from the interface to an IMS control region.

You can route all commands through IMS by selecting the Command routing option. By default, BMCXLINK sends commands to the IMS Operations Manager (OM) for processing. OM then routes the command to the appropriate address space (for example IMS, or IMS Connect). Turning on the GLOBAL option causes BMCXLINK to send the command only to IMS, which forwards the command to OM if appropriate.

If you select the GLOBAL option and the target is a group, redundant commands are issued because the command is sent to each IMS in the group. If you do not select the GLOBAL option, a Structured Call Interface (SCI) that is associated with the target's IMSPLEX must be running on the same LPAR as BMCXLINK.

The following figure shows the command routing option panel.

Figure 126: Edit Global Options panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ETA: Edit Global Options</th>
<th>Command routing option. Select if desired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VTAM User Session ACBNAME prefix . . GPF6</td>
<td>Route all commands through IMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DASD unit name for temporary files . . SYSALDA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace table dynamic dump sysout class A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request status check time interval . . 1</td>
<td>(1-99999 seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WTO message codes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routing code . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 11</td>
<td>(1-128)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptor code . . . . . . . . . . . . . 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Task Instructions for Administration Features

See the following sections for instructions on administration features:

- “Processing User Access Profiles” on page 308
- “Displaying and Zapping IMS Control Region Storage” on page 310
- “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311
- “Refreshing Signon Return Code Text and User Messages” on page 316
- “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317
Processing User Access Profiles

The User Access Profile panel allows you to create new user access profiles or modify or delete existing user access profiles that allow or restrict users from using ETA features to customize IMS systems.

Figure 127: Panel Flow – Processing User Access Profiles

Before you begin

You must have user access profile administrator authority to perform this task. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Add a User Access Profile

1. Go to the User Access Profiles panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.
   b. Type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The User Access Profiles panel is displayed.

2. To add a new user access profile:
   a. Type INSERT on the Command line and press Enter. The Insert User Access Profile pop-up window is displayed.
   b. Type a user ID or masking pattern in the Userid or mask field. A masking pattern will allow a group of users to make the same types of changes on the IMSID that you specify in the following step.
c Type an IMSID or masking pattern in the **IMSID/Group or mask** field. A masking pattern will allow a user or group of users to use the same ETA features on multiple IMS systems.

d Press **Enter** to return to the User Access Profiles panel.

3 Specify which ETA features the user or users will be allowed to use. Type **Y** as appropriate in the feature fields that are displayed for the inserted user ID or for other user IDs. The default value for each field is **N**.

The **Descriptor Edit** and **TSS table Edit** security options are not associated with an IMSID for validation purposes. ETA selects all access profiles matching the user ID requesting access while ignoring the **IMSID/Group** field. If any of the selected profiles specifies **Y**, then access will be granted.

The **CPUID Refresh** security option controls access to the ETA Product Authorization Primary Menu in the same way. However, access to the **CPU-id** option on the Refresh Menu requires an IMSID or Group match. Thus, access to these menus may be dictated by different access profiles. Similar logic applies to editing and refreshing the message customization and command security tables associated with **Exit/Msg/CS**.

4 To delete a user access profile, type **D** in the **A** field next to the applicable user ID and press Enter.

5 Press **F3**. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save your additions and changes</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. ETA saves the changes and displays the Administration Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to the Administration Menu without saving any changes</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The Administration Menu is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continue editing user access profiles</td>
<td>3 in the selection field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The User Access Profiles panel is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 After you have returned to the Administration Menu, press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

Perform other customizations.
Displaying and Zapping IMS Control Region Storage

The ETA IMS Storage Display panel allows you to display and zap storage in the IMS control region.

**Figure 128: Panel Flow – Displaying and Zapping IMS Control Region Storage**

Before you begin

You must have appropriate user access profile authority to display or zap IMS control region storage.

To display IMS control region storage, you must activate the IMS storage display option on the IMSID Basic Options panel.

To modify IMS control region storage, you must activate the IMS storage zap option on the IMSID Basic Options panel. See “Specifying Basic IMSID Information and Options” on page 44 for instructions.

To Display and Zap Storage in the IMS Control Region

1. Go to the IMS Storage Display panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.
   b. Type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMS Storage Display panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID. To change the IMSID, type the new IMSID in the IMSID field and press Enter.

3. Verify or change the dump address and length.
a If you want to change the dump address, type a valid address in the **Dump Address** field. Press **F1** or see “Dump Formats” on page 293 for information about valid dump addresses.

b If you want to display a certain amount of storage or if you believe that the amount of storage that you need to display is greater than the default amount that ETA will display, type the decimal number of bytes in the **Length** field.

If you want ETA to calculate the amount of storage to display, leave this field blank. Otherwise, press **F1** or see “Dump Length” on page 294 for information about valid values and the use of this field.

c Press **Enter**. The storage that you specified and any related comments regarding the storage are displayed.

d Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only display the storage</td>
<td>You have completed this task. After verifying the storage, press <strong>F3</strong>. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the storage</td>
<td>Go to Step 4 on page 311.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Change the IMS control region storage as required.

a If you wish to include comments, type them in the **Comment** field.

b Type your changes in the hexadecimal or the EBCDIC character display fields.

c Type **ZAP** in the **Command** area and press **Enter**. The changes that you made are applied to the IMS control region.

d Press **F3**. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.

5 Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

Perform other customizations.

---

**Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text**

The ETA Message Customization Entry panel and pop-up windows allow you to modify error messages that terminal users may receive, create messages to replace
the DFS3649A, DFS3650I, and DFS2467I formats, and modify the text that is associated with signon message return codes.

**Figure 129: Panel Flow - Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text**

Before you begin

You must have user access profile authority for exits and messages (the Exit/Msg/CS option).

**To Edit User Messages and Signon Return Code Text**

1. Go to the Message Customization Entry panel.

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.

   b. Type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Message Customization Entry panel is displayed.
2 Verify or change the load library names.

Verify or change the name of the library that will contain modules ETASMSG0 and ETAUMSG0 after you edit user messages, signon return code text, or both.

3 Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to view or edit...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signon return code text (including DFS3649A, DFS3650I, and DFS2467I format replacements)</td>
<td>1 in the <strong>Selection</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The Signon RC Message Customization panel is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User messages</td>
<td>2 in the <strong>Selection</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>. The User Message Customization panel is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Edit signon return code text or user messages.

a Scroll through the list of signon return codes or messages, or use the LOCATE command to display the signon return code or message that you want to modify.

In addition to an extensive group of IBM DFS3649A reason code text, ETA allows you to customize the following DFS3649A, DFS3650I, and DFS2467I format replacement messages:

- **S0**—The default message for this return code is DFS3650I SESSION READY FOR INPUT.
  
  If you select option 1 (user format) on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S0 will be displayed in addition to a user format that you have created when a dynamic or static terminal completes signon processing.
  
  If you select option 3 (user message) on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S0 will be displayed when a dynamic or static terminal completes signon processing.

- **S1**—The default message for this return code is DFS3649A /SIGN COMMAND REQUIRED.
  
  If you select option 1 (user format) on the DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S1 will be displayed in addition to a user format that you have created when a dynamic or static terminal does not complete signon processing.

- **S2**—The default message for this return code is DFS3649A SIGNON USER REPLACEMENT MESSAGE.
  
  If you select option 3 (user message) on the DFS3649A Message Options - Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S2 will be displayed when a dynamic or static terminal completes signon processing.
S3—The default message for this return code is DFS3650I SESSION READY FOR INPUT.

If you select option 1 (user format) on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S3 will be displayed in addition to a user format that you have created when a dynamic terminal completes autosignon processing, or when a static terminal bypasses signon processing.

If you select option 3 (user message) on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S3 will be displayed when a dynamic terminal completes autosignon processing, or when a static terminal bypasses signon processing.

S4—The default message for this return code is:

PASSWORD EXPIRES IN @@@@ DAYS.

If you select option 6 (password expiration message) on the DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S4 will be displayed in addition to a user format that you have created when a dynamic or static terminal completes signon processing.

Note

This feature is supported for the RACF security package only.

S5—The default message for this return code is DFS2467I HH:MM:SS /SIGN COMMAND REJECTED RC =.

If you select option 1 (user format) on the DFS2467I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the default text for signon return code S5 will be displayed in addition to a user format that you have created when a static terminal completes autosignon processing or bypasses signon processing.

If you select option 2 (user message) on the DFS2467I Message Options – Terminal Type panel, the text that you specify for S5 will be displayed when a static terminal completes autosignon processing or bypasses signon processing.

If you do not select the option to include the error return code on the DFS2467I Message Replacement Options panel, the last four characters of the DFS2467I message will be removed before the error return code text is concatenated to the text of the default or user DFS2467I message.

b Perform the following actions as needed:
## If you want to... | Then...
--- | ---
Edit the text | Type the new text in the Message text field.  
-Or-  
Type S in the A field and press Enter to display the Edit Text pop-up window, enter the new text in the Replacement text field, and press F3 to return to the Signon RC Message Customization panel or the User Message Customization panel.
Add text or space to or remove text or space from the display | Type ALTVIEW on the Command line and press Enter or F10.
View the text that was loaded during ETA installation | Type S in the A field and press Enter. The default text is displayed in the Default text field. Press F3 to return to the Signon RC Message Customization or the User Message Customization panel.
Add or change the name of a format that will be selected for display based on the signon return code (Signon RC Message Customization panel only) | Type the name of that format next to the desired signon return code in the Format field. The Use format in Signon RC message module option must be selected on the DFS3649A Message Options - Terminal Type panel before the format will be displayed. ETA will add the new text and issue a warning message when the messages module is initially displayed. Messages for which user or default text already exists will not be replaced.

**c** Press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

**d** Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save the changes and return to the Message Customization Entry panel</td>
<td>Type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel the changes and return to the Message Customization Entry panel</td>
<td>Type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to the Signon RC Message Customization panel or the User Message Customization panel</td>
<td>Type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 From the Message Customization Entry panel, press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

Perform the following actions as needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apply signon return code or user message changes to an IMS control region</td>
<td>See Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals on page 325 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
Specify in the ETA IMSID options that the S1 or S2 signon return code text that you created replace the DFS3649A format | See “Replacing the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults” on page 122 for instructions.
Specify in the ETA IMSID options that the S0, S3, or S4 signon return code text that you created replace the DFS3650I format | See “Task Instructions for DFS3650I Message Options” on page 133.
Specify in the ETA IMSID options that the S5 signon return code text that you created replace the DFS2467I format | See “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—Terminal Type” on page 136 for instructions.

**Refreshing Signon Return Code Text and User Messages**

Once you have modified signon return code text, user messages, or both, you can use options that are available on the Message Customization Entry panel to dynamically update the messages that are used in an IMS control region.

**Figure 130: Panel Flow – Refreshing Signon Return Code Text and User Messages**

![Panel Flow Diagram]

**Before you begin**

You must have user access profile authority for exits and messages (the Exit/Msg/CS option).

**To Refresh Signon Return Code Text and User Messages**

1. Go to the Message Customization Entry panel.
   
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.
b Type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Message Customization Entry panel is displayed.

2 Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to refresh...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signon return code text</td>
<td>Select option 1 from the Refresh action bar item and press Enter. The Refresh Target pop-up window is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User messages</td>
<td>Select option 2 from the Refresh action bar item and press Enter. The Refresh Target pop-up window is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Enter the target of the Refresh request in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Confirm Signon Return Code Messages Refresh or the Confirm User Messages Refresh pop-up window is displayed.

4 Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refresh the specified module</td>
<td>1 in the selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel the module refresh</td>
<td>2 in the selection field and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Following a refresh attempt, ETA issues a message that indicates whether the refresh was successful.

5 Press F3 until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

Where to go from here

Perform other customizations.

Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table

The ETA Command Processing table contains information about each IMS command and the first keyword of the command.

The table also contains information which can direct Enhanced Command Security to take specific actions for a given command or keyword. If the default ETA
Command Processing table does not address your security needs, you can create and edit a new Command Processing table.

**Figure 131: Panel Flow – Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table**

![Panel Flow Diagram]

**Before you begin**

You must have appropriate user access profile authority for the Enhanced Command Security options.

**To Create, Edit, or View a Command Processing Table**

1. Go to the Command Security Administration panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.
   b. Type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Command Security Administration panel is displayed.

2. Complete the Command Security Administration panel.
   a. Specify the name of the library where the Enhanced Command Security modules are stored in the Command Security library field.
   b. Specify the Command Processing table that you initially want to display in the Table suffix field.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a new table from the default Command Processing table when no user-created table exists</td>
<td>Type any suffix in the <strong>Table suffix</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit a Command Processing table that was previously created</td>
<td>Type the desired suffix in the <strong>Table suffix</strong> field or leave the field blank to display a member selection list and press <strong>Enter</strong>. From the member selection list, type <strong>S</strong> next to the desired suffix and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View the default Command Processing table when a user-created table already exists</td>
<td>Type a new suffix in the <strong>Table Suffix</strong> field or leave the field blank to display a member selection list and press <strong>Enter</strong>. From the member selection list, determine an unused suffix, type <strong>S new</strong> on the <strong>Command line</strong>, and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Command Security Table Edit panel is displayed.

2. View or revise the security information that is displayed on the Command Processing Table panel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View the security information that is specified for one or more IMS commands</td>
<td>Press <strong>F7</strong> (Page Up) and <strong>F8</strong> (Page Down) to move to the section of the table that displays security information for the command that you want to view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Revise the Process Option for one or more commands | Type one of the following values in the **applicable field** for any command:  
  - **PROCESS (P)**—perform normal command security checking on the specified command and its keywords.  
  - **REJECT (R)**—reject the specified command and all of its keywords, bypassing command security checking.  
  - **ALLOW (A)**—allow the specified command and all of its keywords to be executed, bypassing command security checking.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Reset the security information for a command or a command keyword to its default values | Type a **D** in the **A** field next to the command or keyword that you want to reset.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Change the processing for a command keyword | Type **Y** or **N** in the **Allow** keyword, **Allow "ALL"**, or **Allow Generics** fields.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Use all of the options from an existing table | Type **COPY suffix** on the **Command line** and press **Enter**. To display a member selection list, omit suffix.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
If you want to... | Then...
---|---
View table entries sorted in some order other than the default order, by Command | Select an option from the Sort action bar item or issue the SORT command. The current sort order is displayed in the Sorted by field.
Determine where changes have already been made | Review the Chg field for asterisks.

4 Press **F3**. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save the changes to the table and exit the edit session</td>
<td>1 in the <strong>Selection</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit the edit session without saving the changes to the table</td>
<td>2 in the <strong>Selection</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to the Command Processing Table panel without saving the changes</td>
<td>3 in the <strong>Selection</strong> field and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 From the Command Security Administration panel, press **F3** until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

**Where to go from here**

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generate a Command Processing Table report in batch</td>
<td>See “Batch Generation of the Command Processing Table Report” on page 411 for information about generating a report, and see ETACNTL member ETA#CSR1 that is required to generate the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh any command security features (delete a Command Security ACEE, disconnect a Command Security user ID, or refresh the Command Security profiles or the Command Processing table)</td>
<td>See “Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals” on page 325 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Refreshing Command Security Features**

The Enhanced Command Security feature allows you to perform the following refresh functions: delete the Accessor Environment Element (ACEE) control block, disconnect a command security user ID, refresh the command access profiles, and refresh the Command Processing table.
Figure 132: Panel Flow – Refreshing Command Security Features

Before you begin

You must have appropriate user access profile authority for the Command Security options.

Command Security must be active.

To Refresh the Command Security Features

1. Go to the Command Security Administration panel.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The ETA Administration Menu is displayed.
   b. Type 6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Command Security Administration panel is displayed.

2. From the Refresh action bar item, select option 1 to refresh the Command Security table and press Enter. The Refresh Target pop-up window is displayed.

3. On the Refresh Target pop-up window, type the IMSID or Group that you want to refresh in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Confirm Command Processing Table Refresh pop-up window is displayed.

4. Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refresh the Command Processing table</td>
<td>Type 1 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel the refresh</td>
<td>Type 2 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 From the Command Security Administration panel, press F3 until the ETA Main Menu is displayed.

Where to go from here

Perform any of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit or view a Command Processing table</td>
<td>See “Creating, Editing, or Viewing a Command Processing Table” on page 317 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate a Command Processing Table report</td>
<td>See “Batch Generation of the Command Processing Table Report” on page 411 for information about generating a report, and see ETACNTL member ETA#CSR1 that is required to generate the report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Utility Features

This section contains information about the ETA Execute IMS Command panel and the ETA refresh features.

Execute IMS Command Panel

ETA provides an online IMS command feature that allows you to issue IMS commands without leaving the ETA online interface.

No special command syntax is required to issue IMS commands from the ETA Execute IMS Command panel. Type the command as you would at an IMS command prompt, following the guidelines and restrictions that are found in the IBM publication, IMS Command Reference.

Refresh Features

ETA refresh features allow you to dynamically update the following options:

- IMSID Options—updates the ETA IMSID options that are in use in an IMS Control Region.
- TSS—updates TSS table data that is in use on an IMS system by purging all data from the TSS cache buffers so that ETA reloads it as TSS tables are accessed. Use this feature if you have specified that ETA use TSS cache buffers.
- CPU ID—updates the CPU-ID password that activates ETA on a CPU that is licensed to run ETA.

- Signon messages—updates the signon return code messages that are used in the IMS control region. This update should be performed after using the Message Customization panels to edit return code messages.

- User messages—updates the ETA user messages that are used in the IMS control region. This update should be performed after using the Message Customization panels to edit user messages.

- Command Security—updates the IMS control region when you initiate any of the following actions:
  - refresh the access profiles
  - refresh the Command Processing table
  - delete a Command Security user ID ACEE
  - disconnect a command security user ID from an input source

- ALOT—updates the default IMS autologoff (ALOT) interval on an IMS system that you specify. Changes remain in effect for the current IMS session only.

- ASOT—updates the default IMS autosignoff (ASOT) interval on an IMS system that you specify. Changes remain in effect for the current IMS session only.

- Dead Letter Queue—updates the default IMS Dead Letter Queue interval on an IMS system that you specify. Changes remain in effect for the current IMS session only.

- Reload DFSUPT0x—updates the device characteristics table on an IMS system that you specify. Any device descriptors that were installed after IMS was started will be lost, since they are assumed to have been incorporated into the new table.

Task Instructions for Utility Features

See the following sections for instructions on utility features:

- “Issuing IMS Commands from within the ETA Online Interface” on page 324
- “Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals” on page 325
- “Batch Refresh of ETA Data” on page 412
Issuing IMS Commands from within the ETA Online Interface

The ETA Execute IMS Command panel allows you to issue IMS commands without leaving the ETA online interface.

**Figure 133: Panel Flow – Issuing IMS Commands from within the ETA Online Interface**

Before you begin

You must have user access profile authority to use this feature. Contact your ETA system administrator.

BMCXLINK and the appropriate IMS control regions must be active.

**To Issue IMS Commands from within the ETA Online Interface**

1. Go to the Execute IMS Command panel.
   
   From the ETA Main Menu, type 4 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The Execute IMS Command panel is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID. To change the IMSID, type the new IMSID in the **Target IMSIDs or Groups** field and press **Enter**.

3. Issue IMS commands. The last three commands issued from this field are preserved in it. An asterisk (*) is added to the beginning of each command to prevent you from accidently issuing the commands when you press **Enter**. To re-issue one or all the commands, simply delete the asterisk and press **Enter**. If you need to issue a different command, type over any existing command. Only those commands allowed for Automated Operator (AO) programs may be entered. See the IBM publication *IMS Command Reference* for details. You can use the Command action bar item to select the last 10 commands issued.

   **Note**
   Type 2 commands should be entered without a slash (/).

4. Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

Perform other customizations.
**Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals**

The ETA Refresh Menu allows you to dynamically update CPU ID (product authorization) passwords, IMSID options, TSS table data, and the IMS default ALOT, ASOT, Dead Letter Queue intervals, signon return code messages, user messages, device descriptor table, and ETA Enhanced Command Security.

*Figure 134: Panel Flow – Refreshing ETA Data and Timeout Intervals*

---

**Before you begin**

You must have user access profile timeout refresh authority to use this feature. Contact your ETA system administrator.

For an IMSID options or TSS table refresh to have an effect on an IMS system, you must have changed IMSID options or created or modified one or more TSS tables. See “IMS Customization by IMSID” on page 53 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.

BMCXLINK and the appropriate IMS control regions must be active.

---

**WARNING**

Performing a TSS refresh during peak periods may cause excessive I/O to the TSS data set, resulting in excessive CPU utilization and decreased performance.

---

**To Refresh ETA Options**

1. Go to the ETA Refresh Menu.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 6 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The ETA Refresh Menu is displayed.

2. Verify or change the IMSID or Group. To change the IMSID or Group, type the new IMSID or Group in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**.

3. Perform any of the following actions:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>refresh IMSID or Group options</td>
<td>1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm Options Refresh pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to refresh the IMSID or Group options, or type 2 to cancel the refresh. Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh TSS tables</td>
<td>2 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm TSS Refresh pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to refresh the TSS tables, or type 2 to cancel the refresh. Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh CPUID data</td>
<td>3 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm CPU-id Refresh pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to refresh the CPUID data, or type 2 to cancel the refresh. Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh signon messages</td>
<td>4 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm Signon Return Code Messages Refresh pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to refresh the signon return code message module, or type 2 to cancel the refresh. Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh user messages</td>
<td>5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm User Messages Refresh pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to refresh the user messages module, or type 2 to cancel the refresh. Press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh or reset Command Security options</td>
<td>6 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Command Security Refresh Menu is displayed. Make the appropriate selection as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ Type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter to refresh access profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ Type 2 in the Selection field press Enter to refresh the Command Processing table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ Type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter to delete the ACEE for the specified user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ Type 4 in the Selection field and press Enter to disconnect a user ID from the specified input source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The applicable confirmation pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to perform the requested action, or type 2 to cancel the requested action. Press Enter. Press F3 to return to the Refresh Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to...</td>
<td>Type...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| reset IMS default ALOT interval          | 7 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Reset ALOT panel is displayed. Make the appropriate selection as follows:  
  - Type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter to log off after the specified number of minutes of inactivity.  
  - Type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter to never log off due to inactivity.  
  - Type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter to log off immediately after signoff completes.  
The Confirm ALOT Reset pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to reset the ALOT, or type 2 to cancel the reset. Press Enter. Press F3 to return to the Refresh Menu. |
| reset IMS default ASOT interval          | 8 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Reset ASOT panel is displayed. Make the appropriate selection as follows:  
  - Type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter to sign off after the specified number of minutes of inactivity.  
  - Type 2 in the Selection field and press Enter to never sign off due to inactivity.  
  - Type 3 in the Selection field and press Enter to sign off immediately after the last message is delivered.  
The Confirm ASOT Reset pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to reset the ASOT, or type 2 to cancel the reset. Press Enter. Press F3 to return to the Refresh Menu. |
| reset IMS default Dead Letter Queue interval | 9 in the Selection field, specify the number of days in the days field, and press Enter. The Confirm DLQ Interval Reset pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to reset the DLQ interval, or type 2 to cancel the reset. Press Enter. |
| reload the Device Descriptor table       | 10 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Confirm Reload Device Descriptor Table pop-up window is displayed. Type 1 in the Selection field to reload the Device Descriptor table, or type 2 to cancel the reload. Press Enter. |

Following a refresh attempt, ETA issues a message that indicates whether the refresh was successful. For a TSS tables refresh, all table names that had buffers in storage will be returned. If no TSS tables have been accessed, the message "No tables to refresh" is issued. IMSID may return error messages if a TSS data set name was added or changed.
4 Repeat this task to refresh additional data for this IMSID or to refresh data for other IMSIDs as required.

5 Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

Perform other customizations.

Diagnostic Features

This section describes the following features:

- Trace features supported or provided by ETA
- IMS control region diagnostic features supported or provided by ETA
- BMCXLINK diagnostic features
- TSO/ISPF diagnostic features supported by ETA
- Problem documentation procedures

IMS Dispatcher Trace for IMS Control Region

The IMS dispatcher trace feature traces the calls of the IMS dispatcher and places the results in a trace table.

You can turn the feature on and off by using the online /TRACE command, but you must first use the DISP=ON parameter in the OPTIONS statement when you initialize your IMS system. If this feature is not activated on your IMS system, you should consider activating it to help diagnose any future problems with IMS or other products that run under IMS.

Refer to the IBM Publication IMS Installation Volume 2: System Definition and Tailoring for more information about the IMS dispatcher trace feature.
ETA Dynamic Terminal Trace Feature for IMS Control Region

ETA provides a trace feature that is used for BMC Software diagnostic purposes. The feature maintains a trace within the IMS control region to document events that ETA considers significant. The feature has the following elements:

- Trace table
- Macro interface
- Callable trace routine

The trace table consists of 3200 64-byte entries located in extended private virtual storage. The size of the table never exceeds 3200 entries; when the table is full, writing continues by overlaying the oldest entry with the newest entry.

Two forms of the trace feature macro interface are available. The first form generates a DSECT of a standard trace table entry. The second form of the macro interface traces an event. See “ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits” on page 438 for information about using these macros.

IMS Control Region Documentation

If a problem occurs, BMC Customer Support requires several pieces of documentation to diagnose the problem.

When you create or acquire the required documentation, keep it until the problem has been resolved to your satisfaction. BMC will not necessarily need this material but, if needed, it is important to have it readily available. This section describes how to create the required documentation.

Storage Dumps

IMS produces only one unformatted dump for each failure (SYSMDUMP or SYS1.DUMP). When submitting these dumps to BMC for analysis, use IEBGENER to write the unformatted dump to tape. BMC will perform the necessary formatting.

IMS Master Terminal Log

Important IMS and ETA messages are also written to the IMS Master Terminal. These messages should be noted and understood. Retain the complete text of any new or unusual message that is issued at or near the time of the problem.
MVS System Log

Important IMS and ETA messages are written to the MVS System Log by using the WTO or WTOR macro instructions. These messages should be noted and understood. Retain the complete text of any new or unusual message that is issued at or near the time of the problem.

File Select Print Utility

If confidentiality prohibits disclosure of complete log contents, you can use the IBM file select print utility (DFSERA10) to copy (not print) these record types to tape. DFSERA10 can select or print log records that contain a specific character or hexadecimal string, irrespective of offset. ETACNTL member ETA#ERA7 contains JCL to use DFSERA10.

For example, to select all records that contain the string ABC, include one of the following SYSIN control cards:

```plaintext
OPTION PRINT E=DFSERA70,C=E,PARM=(DATA=ABC)
```

-Or-

```plaintext
OPTION PRINT E=DFSERA70,C=E,PARM=(DATA=X'C1C2C3')
```

DFSERA10 is particularly useful when researching terminal-related problems from the IMS log.

IMS System Log Tapes

IMS log records are frequently needed for analysis. If a problem requires BMC analysis, retain the log tapes from the most recent cold start until the problem has been resolved to your satisfaction.

Usually, a limited subset of log record types is required, but occasionally other types are needed. The most frequently used log records are X'02', X'40', X'63', X'72', and X'EA'.

IPCS

Executing the IPCS CLIST provided by IBM with IMS against a SYSMDUMP can provide valuable information that is often useful for problem diagnosis.
**Operator Dumps**

For all releases of IMS, an operator dump (Dyna-Dump or SVC Dump) produced by using the O/S DUMP command is acceptable if generated according to the following specifications:

\[
\text{DUMP COMM=(problem description)}
\]

The system returns the following message:

\[
*nn \text{ IEE094D SPECIFY OPERAND(S) FOR DUMP COMMAND}
\]

You respond with the following command:

\[
nn,\text{JOBNAME=imsname,SDATA=(RGN,TRT,CSA),END}
\]

Operator dumps are especially useful for dumping IMS when you are experiencing a loop or wait state, or when it is undesirable to MODIFY DUMP the system.

**BMCXLINK Diagnostics Provided by ETA**

BMCXLINK communicates requests that you submit through the TSO/ISPF-based ETA online interface to an IMS control region. Problems seldom occur in BMCXLINK alone; usually the problem affects a TSO user and BMCXLINK at the same time. Documentation of BMCXLINK failures can consist of storage dumps, operator dumps, and traces.

**Storage Dumps**

If BMCXLINK abends, the SVC dump is usually sufficient for problem analysis.

**Operator Dumps**

When BMCXLINK hangs or fails to respond to a TSO user, the problem is more complex.

Documentation of this type of failure usually requires concurrent dumps of the IMS control region, the BMCXLINK region, and the TSO user address space. The operator DUMP command can satisfy this requirement if generated with the following specifications:

\[
\text{DUMP COMM=(problem description)}
\]

The system returns the following message:

\[
nn \text{ IEE094D SPECIFY OPERAND(S) FOR DUMP COMMAND}
\]
Submit unformatted operator dumps to BMC Software on 6250-BPI standard label (SL) tapes or 3480 cartridges.

**Traces**

BMCXLINK also traces all inputs and outputs.

In this case, inputs and outputs refer to communications between BMCXLINK and TSO users and the IMS control regions. This trace is implemented by using the SNAP macro instruction with the trace output directed to the SNAPOUT DD. Occasionally, BMC Customer Support will ask you to add a SNAPOUT DD SYSOUT=A statement to the BMCXLINK and TSO user JCL. The entries printed in this trace output will assist in problem analysis. When it is not needed, you can avoid trace output by omitting the SNAPOUT DD statement.

**TSO/ISPF Diagnostics and ETA**

Because of the recovery mechanisms within TSO/ISPF, most dumps automatically generated by TSO/ISPF do not contain useful diagnostic information.

You must take certain specific steps to prevent normal TSO/ISPF abend recovery. Without these steps, the resulting dump information is insufficient and unusable. The following are typical examples of insufficient and unusable TSO/ISPF dumps:

- **S0C4 in LMOD(ISPMAIN) CSECT(ISPMRO)**
  
  ISPMRO invokes SVC13 to generate an additional abend after ISPF has already terminated and recovered from an ISPF dialog error. This is normal processing when ISPF is not in test mode.

- **S0C4 in ISPSUBS, ISRSUBS, or ISPTASK**
  
  These are the names of ISPF load modules that contain common service subroutines. You need to research the dump further or redocument the problem to identify the original abend and the abending CSECT.

When an ISPF-related problem can be duplicated, BMC Support may occasionally ask you to perform certain steps to obtain a dump of the TSO/ISPF address space. These steps typically include invoking TSO/ISPF in test mode, preallocating a SYSMDUMP DD statement, reproducing the original abend, or inducing a diagnostic abend via the DBC¢ command. You must follow these steps exactly to generate a TSO/ISPF dump with meaningful and usable information.
Problem Determination Documentation

Please do not submit documentation unless BMC Customer Support specifically requests it. BMC makes every effort to request the minimum documentation required to analyze a given problem.

Overnight Mail and FTP Instructions

When documentation is requested, make sure you address the package to the BMC Customer Support representative's attention.

Send the package to BMC via an overnight carrier. The BMC Customer Support representative will provide a carrier name and charge account number.

For instructions on sending problem documentation via FTP, access http://www.bmc.com/support_home to view the support page on the BMC Web site.
Sample Configurations

This appendix describes and provides instructions on how to use EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA) to implement sample IMS system, logon, and signon configurations. You can use these sample configurations as a basis for customizing IMS systems.

Panel Display and Flow Information

The ALTVIEW command toggles the display of panels between two different views. The panel flows documented in this appendix are based on View 2, in the following figure. For the task instructions in this appendix, ensure that your display of panels match this view.

**Figure 135: View 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>View</th>
<th>Refresh</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Help</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edit IMSID Options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| IMSID | . . . . . . . . : IMSA | _ Alternate view |

Edit/Activate IMSID options. Select one or more.

- **Basic** - Information required for ETA operation
  - ** Defaults** - Zap options, group name, network LUNAME
  - **TSS** - Translate Sub-system options
    - ** Defaults** - TSS table dsn, cache buffers
- **Unsolicited output** - Unknown destinations/dynamic printers
  - ** Defaults** - Method, MSGDEL, RESPMODE, ULC
  - **TSS Options** - TRANSACT, UNSOLOUT TSS tables
- **Logon** - Building nodes at logon
  - ** Defaults** - Method, VTAM USERDATA
  - ** Terminal type** - Logon options by terminal type
    - ** TSS Options** - LOGONNOD, LOGONTYP TSS tables
- **Logoff** - Node characteristics after logoff
  - ** Defaults** - Options for STSN and static terminals
    - **TSS Options** - Logoff TSS table processing options
  - ** Autosignon** - Create/Customize USERS and LTERMs
    - ** Defaults** - Terminal type selection, other options

Sample IMS System Configurations

This section provides information and instructions on how you can use ETA to quickly implement four common IMS system configurations on an IMS system that
uses the IBM Extended Terminal Option (ETO) feature. The configurations in this section assume that ETO has been installed or will soon be installed.

**Note**
The configurations described in this section are only samples that you can use to learn about ETA and to gain insight into ways to customize your IMS systems. Parts of these configurations may not apply to your installation.

Before using ETA to customize your IMS systems, read the descriptions of the four sample configurations and choose the one that best serves as a basis for creating your customizations. Use the System Configuration Form on “System Configuration Form” on page 336 for any of the following purposes:

- Planning your customizations
- Serving as a checklist to ensure that your customizations are executed
- Outlining steps so that other personnel can perform similar customizations on other systems

If you require further customizations that are not included in these sample configurations, see the Table of Contents or Index of this guide to find information and instructions on how to use other IMS customization features that ETA provides.

**System Configuration Form**

Use this form to record the types of system configuration changes you want to implement through ETA and the pages of this manual that provide instructions for making those changes.

- Unsolicited Output:

  __________________________________________ Page: __________
  __________________________________________ Page: __________
  __________________________________________ Page: __________
  __________________________________________ Page: __________
  __________________________________________ Page: __________

- Logon:

  __________________________________________ Page: __________
Sample IMS System Configurations

Autosignon:

Signon:

DFS3649A Replacements:

DFS3650I Replacements:
Sample IMS System Configuration 1

Company AAA has rather straightforward IMS system requirements. It uses two types of terminals: SLU2 terminals with a model 2 screen size and 3270 terminals with a model 2 screen size. All terminals use the same type and terminal options. LTERM names are always the same name as the node name.

Because Company AAA has limited CPU resources, it wants to limit the number of concurrent terminal users to 1000. Since its users do not sign on to IMS, Company AAA does not want IMS to issue the DFS3650I message at logon. Instead, the company wants a blank screen to appear after logon so that employees can immediately enter a transaction name.

The concept of dynamic terminals and LTERMs are new to the employees of this company; to help with the transition, Company AAA wants inactive terminals to stay logged on for 1 hour, in case the user wants to reuse the same terminal. Because employees of this company do not sign on, Company AAA wants to use the ETA Autosignon feature so that employees do not need to learn how to sign on. Since the employees will not sign on, the company does not want to use both the autosignoff and autologoff intervals; the company wants autologoff to occur at the same time as autosignoff.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- **Logon options:**
  - Limit concurrent users to 1000
  - Specify default logon descriptors
  - Autosignoff (ASOT) interval equals 60 minutes
  - Autologoff occurs at the same time as autosignoff

- **Autosignon options:**
  - Signon not required
  - LTERM name equals node name

- **DFS3650I options:**
  - DFS3650I panel replaced by blank screen
Company BBB uses SLU2, SLUP, and 3270 terminals, with several different screen sizes for each of these terminal types. The company uses SLUP devices and does not want to reprogram these devices to provide the information required for logon processing. LTERM names for SLUP devices must be the same as the node name.

Company BBB requires that users sign on to IMS and wants LTERM names equal to the user ID. Employees at Company BBB are accustomed to seeing a user format screen with important telephone numbers after successful logon, and the company wants to continue using this format. After successful signon, Company BBB wants a user format (different from the user format presented after successful logon) to display for all terminal types except SLUP, which requires a blank screen.

Company BBB has just completed a merger; because the employees are unfamiliar with the new transactions, they occasionally type incorrect transaction names. These errors cause problems for system administrators because IMS creates LTERMs with the incorrect transaction names. These unusable LTERMs remain on the system until they are manually dequeued from the Dead Letter Queue. To avoid this problem, the company wants to customize ETO so that unknown destinations are never created.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Unsolicited Output options:
  - Never create unknown destinations

- Logon options:
  - Allow multiple terminal models per terminal type
  - Provide logon data for SLUP devices

- Signon options:
  - Signon required
  - LTERM name equals node name for SLUP
  - LTERM name equals user ID for all other terminals

- DFS3649A and DFS3650I options:
  - DFS3649A panel replaced by user format
  - DFS3650I panel replaced by blank screen for SLUP terminals
  - DFS3650I panel replaced by user format for all other terminals
Sample IMS System Configuration 3

Company CCC uses a session manager to simplify the logon and signon process for many of its users.

In addition, the company uses several terminal types and three different OUTBUF sizes for SLU2 terminals. Company CCC wants to use the real VTAM node name instead of the session manager pool node name. The session manager can be configured to include the VTAM-defined node name in the VTAM USERDATA.

All employees for Company CCC are required to sign on. More than half of the employees have the LTERM name equal to the user ID and use RACF security.

Company CCC displays a user format after successful logon and wants to continue using this format. After successful signon, the company wants a blank screen to be displayed for SLUP terminals and the DFS058I message to be displayed for SLU2 and 3270 terminals.

Company CCC also has hundreds of printers, most of which are SLU1 printers. The remaining printers are 3286 printers. All SLU1 printers use the same options, and all 3286 printers use the same options. All printers will be created when needed to deliver output from application programs.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Unsolicited Output options:
  - SLU1 and 3286 type printer support

- Logon options:
  - Multiple terminal screen models
  - Multiple OUTBUF sizes for SLU2 terminals
  - Session manager true node name support

- Signon options:
  - Signon required
  - LTERM name equals user ID for some users
  - LTERM name equals name specified in applications for remaining users

- DFS3649A and DFS3650I options:
  - DFS3649A panel replaced by user format
— DFS3650I panel replaced by blank screen for SLUP terminals
— DFS3650I panel replaced by DFS058I panel for SLU2 and 3270 terminals

Sample IMS System Configuration 4

Company DDD is a large installation with multiple requirements for virtually every aspect of its IMS systems.

All available terminal types and screen sizes are used. Employees must be able to sign on multiple times with the same user ID. Senior executives want to log on only once per day. Human Resources employees should be logged off after 10 minutes of inactivity. All other employees should be logged off after 1 hour of inactivity. For senior executives, LTERM name equals the user ID. For all other employees, LTERM name equals the node name. At terminals, autologoff should occur when autosignoff occurs.

Company DDD wants to replace the DFS3649A with different options, depending on the terminal type. The same requirement applies to replacing the DFS3650I message.

The Human Resources department at Company DDD has a number of terminals that are used by all Human Resources employees. This department handles very confidential data and cannot risk having that information being sent to, or viewed by, the wrong person. Because more than one person uses each terminal in the Human Resources department, Company DDD needs to delete any messages queued for Human Resources terminals that are automatically logged off because of inactivity. In all other cases, messages should be retained if a terminal is automatically logged off because of inactivity.

Company DDD wants to allow creation of certain unknown destinations that frequently have output sent to them before they are created. These destinations use the same LTERM and USER options.

The company has several hundred printers at locations around the world. Various types of printers are used, and a variety of options are used for each type of printer. Because of heavy usage, Company DDD wants to retain the LTERM control blocks for each printer after messages for the printer are delivered.

Finally, many of the transactions for Company DDD are conversational, and the company does not want these transactions to be executed or continued by the wrong user.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Unsolicited Output options
— Allow creation of some unknown destinations
— When creating unknown destinations, use the same IMS options
— Multiple printer types
— Multiple options for each type of printer

■ Logon options
— multiple terminal models

■ Signon options
— Signon is required
— Allow multiple signons per user ID
— LTERM name equals the user ID for senior executives
— LTERM name equals the node name for all others
— Terminals used by executives never autosignoff or autologoff
— Terminals used by Human Resources autosignoff after 10 minutes
— All other terminals autosignoff after 1 hour
— All terminals autologoff at autosignoff
— Retain LTERM control blocks when terminals and printers are deleted
— Automatically /DEQ messages for Human Resources
— Automatically/EXIT conversations for all employees

■ DFS3649A and DFS3650I options
— Multiple replacements for the DFS3649A message
— Multiple replacements for the DFS3650I message
Task Instructions for Sample IMS System Configurations

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample IMS system configurations:

- “Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 1” on page 343
- “Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 2” on page 347
- “Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 3” on page 352
- “Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 4” on page 357

Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 1

This topic provides a procedure for implementing sample IMS System Configuration 1.

For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample IMS System Configuration 1” on page 338.

Figure 136: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 1

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement IMS System Configuration 1

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel and verify the IMSID.

   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
b Verify or change the IMSID.

c From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3 Choose logon options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Logon heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

c Activate the option that limits the number of concurrent logons. Type a slash (/) in the Fail logon if maximum dynamic terminals exceeded field. Type the maximum number of logons you want to allow in the Max count field. For system configuration 1, the value is 1000.

d Specify that ETA will provide logon options through its defaults (not TSS). Type 1 in the selection field under the heading Method. Select how ETA should determine logon options and press F3.

e Go to the Logon Options – Terminal Type panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Terminal type item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options – Terminal Type panel is displayed.

f Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the terminal type you want.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If this is your...</th>
<th>Then select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press Enter. Go to Step 3.g on page 344.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press Enter. Go to Step 3.g on page 344.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g Specify that only the IMS default descriptor should be used when creating terminals. Type 1 in the IMS default descriptor field under the heading Descriptor selection order.

h Specify that ASOT equals 60 minutes. Type 1 in the selection field under the heading Autosignoff and type 60 in the minutes field.

i Specify that autologoff occurs at the expiration of the ASOT interval. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Logoff terminal when autosignoff occurs item under the Logoff at autosignoff heading.
j Specify the screen size. Type 2 in the selection field under the heading Screen size and press F3. This is the 24 x 80 option, which is the screen size that corresponds to a model 2.

k Repeat List item. on page 344 through Step 3.j on page 345 for 3270 terminals.

l Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

4 Choose Autosignon options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Autosignon heading to activate ETA Autosignon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Autosignon heading, and press Enter. The Autosignon Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

c Specify that SLU2 and 3270 terminals should attempt Autosignon. Type a slash (/) in the SLU2 and 3270 fields under the heading Specify the terminal types that will attempt autosignon.

d Specify that ETA will provide Autosignon options through its defaults (not TSS). Type 1 in the selection field under the heading Method. Select how ETA should determine autosignon options and press F3.

e Go to the Autosignon LTERM/USER Options panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the LTERM/User name item under the Autosignon heading, and press Enter. The Autosignon Options - LTERM/USER Options panel is displayed.

f Specify that LTERM and user names should equal the node name. Type 2 in the selection field under the LTERM/USER option heading.

g Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5 Specify DFS3650I replacement options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the DFS3650I heading to activate ETA DFS3650I processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Default item under the DFS3650I heading, and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options - ETA Default panel is displayed.

c Specify that ETA will provide DFS3650I message replacement options for terminals through its basic options (not TSS). Type 1 in the selection fields under the Dynamic terminals and Static terminals headings and press F3.
d From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Terminal type item under the DFS3650I heading, and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options - Terminal Type panel is displayed.

e Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the terminal type you want.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If this is your...</th>
<th>Then select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f Specify that a blank screen replace the DFS3650I message. Type 4 in the selection field under the Dynamic terminals message replacement option heading and press F3.

g Repeat List item. on page 345 and Step 5.f on page 346 for 3270 terminals.

h Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

6 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Start the IMS system or refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions on performing a refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 2

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the sample IMS System Configuration 2.

For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample IMS System Configuration 2” on page 339.

Figure 137: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 2

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement IMS System Configuration 2

1  Invoke the ETA online interface.

2  Go to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel and verify the IMSID.
   a  From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b  Verify or change the IMSID.
   c  From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3  Specify Unsolicited Output options.
   a  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Unsolicited output heading to activate ETA Unsolicited Output processing.
   b  Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Unsolicited output heading, and press Enter. The Unsolicited Output Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
c Specify that ETA defaults will be used to specify **Unsolicited Output options**. Type 1 in the selection field under the **Method. Select how ETA should determine output options** heading.

d Specify that unknown destinations should never be created. Type a slash (/) in the **Never create unknown destinations** field.

e Press F3. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

4 Choose basic logon options.

a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive selection** field to the right of the **Logon** heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the **Logon** heading, and press Enter. The **Logon Options – ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

c Activate the system-wide option that allows ETA to provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/FINANCE devices. Type a slash (/) in the **Provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/FINANCE devices** field.

d Specify that ETA will provide logon options through the logon TSS option. Type 2 in the selection field under the heading **Method. Select how ETA should determine logon options** and press F3.

5 Specify data required for the TSS logon options.

a Go to the **Logon Options – TSS Options** panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the **Logon** heading, and press Enter. The **Logon Options – TSS Options** panel is displayed.

b Specify the type of TSS table you want to use and the TSS table name. Type 1 in the **Logon terminal type TSS table** field and type the TSS table name in the appropriate **name** field.

If you have not yet created the TSS table, record the table name for use when you create the table.

c Specify processing options. Type 1 in the first selection field under the **Table 1 processing options** heading and type 2 in the second selection field.

d Press F3. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

6 Choose signon options.
a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Signon** heading to activate ETA Signon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the **Signon** heading, and press **Enter**. The **Signon Options - ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

c Specify that ETA will provide signon options through its defaults (not TSS). Type **1** in the selection field under the heading **Method: Select how ETA should determine signon options** and press **F3**.

d Go to the **Signon Options - LTERM/USER Options** panel. From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **LTERM/ User name** item under the **Signon** heading, and press **Enter**. The **Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options** panel is displayed.

e Specify that LTERM and user names should equal the user ID. Type **1** in the selection field under the **LTERM/USER option** heading.

f Press **F3**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

7 Choose DFS3649A replacement options.

a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **DFS3649A** heading to activate ETA DFS3649A processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the **DFS3649A** heading, and press **Enter**. The **DFS3649A Message Options – ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

c Specify that ETA will provide DFS3649A message replacement options for terminals through its basic options (not TSS). Type **1** in the selection fields under the **Dynamic terminals** and **Static terminals** headings and press **F3**.

d Go to the **DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type** panel. From the **Edit IMSID Options panel**, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Terminal type** item under the **DFS3649A** heading, and press **Enter**. The **DFS3649A Message Options – Terminal Type** panel is displayed.

e Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the terminal type you want.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If this is your...</th>
<th>Then select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If this is your...</td>
<td>Then select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third time performing this step</td>
<td>SLUP and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f Specify the DFS3650I message replacement. Type the number that corresponds to the replacement you want in the selection field under the **Dynamic terminals message replacement option** heading. Use the following values:
If you selected... | Then type...
---|---
SLU2 | 1 in the selection field. Go to Step 8.g on page 351.
3270 | 1 in the selection field. Go to Step 8.g on page 351.
SLUP | 4 in the selection field. Go to Step 8.h on page 351.

g  For SLU2 and 3270 terminals, type the user format name in the **Optional user format name** field.

h  Press F3.

i  Repeat Step Step 7.e on page 349 through Step 8.g on page 351 for the remaining terminal types.

j  Press F3. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

9  Save your changes.

a  From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, press F3. The **Confirm Save** pop-up window is displayed.

b  Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel.

c  Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

| If you want to... | Then... |
---|---|
Perform other customizations | Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu. |
Create a LOGONTYP TSS table that provides screen model information | See “Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table” on page 396 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions. |
Create the user formats that will replace the DFS3649A and DFS3650I messages | See IBM’s documentation for IMS for information on creating user formats. |
Implement your customizations | Start the IMS system or refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions on performing a refresh. |
Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 3

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the implementing sample IMS System Configuration 3.

For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample IMS System Configuration 3” on page 340.

Figure 138: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 3

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSID. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Configure the session manager to pass VTAM-defined node name information in the VTAM USERDATA.

To Implement Sample IMS System Configuration 3

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.
2. Go to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
3. Specify Unsolicited Output options.

Note
This configuration uses TSS to specify all Unsolicited Output options. You can also use ETA defaults to specify options. If you do, those options will be used if corresponding information is not included in the TSS table or if the TSS search fails.
a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Unsolicited output** heading to activate ETA Unsolicited output processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the Unsolicited output heading, and press **Enter**. The **Unsolicited Output Options – ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

c Specify that TSS tables will be used to specify Unsolicited Output options. Type **2** in the selection field under the **Method. Select how ETA should determine output options** heading and press **F3**.

d From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **TSS Options** item under the Unsolicited output heading, and press **Enter**. The **Unsolicited Output Options - TSS Options** panel is displayed.

e Specify the TSS table name. Type the table name in the **Unsolicited output TSS table name** field and record this name for use when you create the table.

f Specify processing options. Type **1** in the first selection field and type **2** in the second selection field under the **Table processing** heading.

g Press **F3**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

4 Choose basic logon options.

a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Logon** heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the Logon heading, and press **Enter**. The **Logon Options – ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

c Activate session manager true node name support. Type a slash (/) or type **S** in the **Session manager true node name support** field and press **Enter**. The **VTAM Node Name Processing** pop-up window is displayed.

d Complete the **VTAM Node Name Processing** pop-up window. Type **1** in the selection field under the **Select the session manager node prefixes that ETA will search for** heading. Type **1** in the selection field under the **Select the search method for locating the nodename in the VTAM USERDATA** heading. Type **1** in the **Position for node name** field. Press **F3**.

e Specify that TSS tables will be used to specify logon options. Type **2** in the selection field under the **Method. Select how ETA should determine logon options** heading and press **F3**.

5 Specify the data required for the TSS logon options.
Note

This configuration uses TSS to specify all logon options except session manager true node name support. You can also use ETA defaults to specify options. If you do, those options will be used if corresponding information is not included in the TSS table or if the TSS search fails.

6 Choose basic signon options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

b Specify the TSS table search order and the TSS table names. Type 1 in the Logon node name TSS table name field, and type the TSS table name in the appropriate name field. Type 2 in the Logon terminal type TSS table name field, type the TSS table name in the appropriate name field, and press Enter.

c Specify processing options. Type 1 in both selection fields under the Table 1 processing options heading. Type 1 in the first selection field under the Table 2 processing options heading. Then type 2 in the table field on the same line (so that the option reads "If successful, use table 2 data"). Finally, type 2 in the second selection field under the same heading, and press Enter.

d From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the LTERM/User name item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options panel is displayed.

e Specify that LTERM names equal to user IDs. Type 1 in the selection field under the LTERM/USER option heading and press F3.

7 Specify data required for the TSS signon options.
This configuration uses TSS to specify all signon options. You can also use ETA defaults to specify options. If you do, those options will be used if corresponding information is not included in the TSS table or if the TSS search fails.

8 Choose DFS3649A replacement options.

   a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Signon heading, and press Enter. The Signon Options – TSS Options panel is displayed.

   b Specify that the TSS table should be searched by node name and specify the TSS table name. Type 1 in the selection field for the Signon node name TSS table name field under the heading TSS table search order and type the TSS table name in the associated name field.

   c Specify that ETA defaults should be used if the TSS table search fails. Under the Table 1 processing options heading, type 1 in the first selection field and type 2 in the second selection field.

   d Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

   e Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the terminal type you want.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If this is your...</th>
<th>Then select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specify the DFS3649A message replacement. Type 1 in the selection field under the **Dynamic terminals message replacement** option heading, type the name of the user format in the **Optional user format name** field and press **F3**.

Repeat Step Step 8.e on page 355 and Step Step 8.f on page 356 for 3270 terminals.

Press **F3**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

Choose DFS3650I replacement options.

- From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **DFS3650I** heading to activate ETA DFS3650I processing.
- Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the **DFS3650I** heading, and press **Enter**. The **DFS3650I Message Options – ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.
- Specify that ETA will provide DFS3650I message replacement options for terminals through its basic options (not TSS). Type 1 in the selection fields under the **Dynamic terminals** and **Static terminals** headings and press **F3**.
- From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Terminal type** item under the **DFS3650I** heading, and press **Enter**. The **DFS3650I Message Options – Terminal Type** panel is displayed.
- Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the terminal type you want.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If this is your...</th>
<th>Then select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First time performing this step</td>
<td>SLU2 and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second time performing this step</td>
<td>3270 and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third time performing this step</td>
<td>SLUP and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specify the DFS3650I message replacement. Type the number that corresponds to the replacement you want in the selection field under the **Dynamic terminals message replacement option** heading. Use the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you selected...</th>
<th>Then type...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>5 in the selection field and press <strong>F3</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270</td>
<td>5 in the selection field and press <strong>F3</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLUP</td>
<td>4 in the selection field and press <strong>F3</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

10 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the user format that will replace the DFS3649A message</td>
<td>See IBM’s documentation for IMS for information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an UNSOLOUT TSS table that specifies options for the creation of SLU1 and 3286 printers</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a LOGONNOD TSS table that specifies all logon options for nodes that are exceptions to the options specified in the LOGONTYP TSS table</td>
<td>See “Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table” on page 396 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a LOGONTYP TSS table that specifies all logon options, including screen size information, by terminal type</td>
<td>See “Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table” on page 396 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Start the IMS system or refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing TSS Table Data in an IMS Control Region” on page 224 for instructions on performing a refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 4**

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the implementing sample IMS System Configuration 4.
For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample IMS System Configuration 4” on page 341.

Figure 139: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 4

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement IMS System Configuration 4

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. Specify basic Unsolicited Output options.

   Note
   Although this configuration uses TSS to specify all printer options, it contains only the names of unknown destinations that can be created. This step assumes that ETA defaults specify IMS options since they are not included in the TSS table. You could alternately specify all information required for LTERM creation in the TSS table.

   a. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Unsolicited output heading to activate ETA Unsolicited Output processing.
   b. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Default item under the Unsolicited output heading, and press Enter. The Unsolicited Output Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
c Specify that TSS tables will be used to specify Unsolicited Output options. Type 2 in the selection field under the Method. Select how ETA should determine the output options heading.

d Specify the Message Delete option. In the selection field under the Message delete option heading, type the value of the option you want.

e Specify the IMS response mode option. In the selection field under the IMS response mode option heading, type the value of the option you want and press Enter.

f Specify the LTERM Output option. Type a slash (/) in the Uppercase output before sending field if you want output from LTERMs to be displayed and printed in uppercase characters.

g Press F3.

4 Specify data required for the TSS Unsolicited Output options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Unsolicited output heading, and press Enter. The Unsolicited Output Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

b Specify the TSS table name. Type the table name in the Unsolicited output TSS table name field and record this name for use when you create the table.

c Specify processing options. Type 1 in the first selection field and type 2 in the second selection field under the Table processing heading.

d Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5 Choose basic logon options.

Note
This configuration uses TSS to specify all logon options. You can also use ETA defaults to specify options. If you do, those options will be used if corresponding information is not included in the TSS table or if the TSS search fails.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Logon heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
c Specify that TSS tables will be used to specify logon options. Type 2 in the selection field under the Method. Select how ETA should determine logon options heading and press F3.

6 Specify data required for the TSS logon options.

a Go to the Logon Options - TSS Options panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

b Specify the type of TSS table you want to use and the TSS table name. Type 1 in the Logon terminal type TSS table field and type the TSS table name in the appropriate name field.

If you have not yet created the TSS table, record the table name for use when you create the table.

c Specify processing options. Type 1 in the first selection field under the Table 1 processing options heading and type 2 in the second selection field.

d Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

7 Choose basic signon options.

Note
This configuration uses TSS to specify all signon options. You can use ETA defaults to specify options not included in the TSS table or to serve as defaults if the TSS search fails.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Signon heading to activate ETA Signon processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Signon heading, and press Enter. The Signon Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

c Specify that TSS tables will be used to specify signon options. Type 2 in the selection field under the Method. Select how ETA should determine signon options heading and press F3.

8 Specify data required for the TSS signon options.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Signon heading, and press Enter. The Signon Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.
b Specify that the TSS table should be searched by node name and specify the TSS table name. Type 1 in the selection field for the Signon userid TSS table name field under the heading TSS table search order and type the TSS table name in the associated name field.

c Specify that ETA defaults should be used if the TSS table search fails. Under the Table 1 processing options heading, type 2 in the first selection field and type 1 in the second selection field.

d Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

9 Specify data required for the TSS DFS3649A options.

Note
Depending on how you want to use TSS, you could also have specified DFS3649A replacement options in the LOGONTYP table you activated in Step 6 on page 360 instead of creating and activating a separate DFS3649A table.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the DFS3649A heading to activate ETA DFS3649A processing.

b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the DFS3649A heading, and press Enter. The DFS3649A Message Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

c Specify the TSS table name. Type the TSS table name in the TSS table name field under the Dynamic terminals heading.

d Specify the TSS table type. Type 1 in the TSS table type field.

e Specify the argument search order. In this case, you only want to search by terminal type. Type 1 in the Terminal type field under the TSS argument search order heading.

f Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

10 Specify data required for the TSS DFS3650I options.

Note
You could also have specified DFS3650I replacement options in the LOGONTYP table you activated in Step 6 on page 360, instead of creating and activating a separate DFS3650I table.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the DFS3650I heading to activate ETA DFS3650I processing.
b Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the DFS3650I heading, and press Enter. The DFS3650I Message Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

c Specify the TSS table name. Type the TSS table name in the TSS table name field under the Dynamic terminals heading.

d Specify the TSS table type. Type 1 in the TSS table type field.

e Specify the argument search order. In this case, you only want to search by terminal type. Type 1 in the Terminal type field under the TSS argument search order heading.

f Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

11 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Select the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an UNSOLOUT TSS table that specifies LTERM names of unknown destinations that can be created, and specifies printer types and information for the creation of dynamic printers</td>
<td>See “Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table” on page 390 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a LOGONTYP TSS table that specifies all logon options, including terminal screen models</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a SIGNON TSS table that specifies all signon options, including LTERM name, multiple signons per user ID, ASOT, ALOT, LTERM retention after signoff, and automatic /DEQ and /EXIT</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a DFS3649A table that specifies DFS3649A message replacements by terminal type</td>
<td>See “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table” on page 400 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to... | Then...
--- | ---
Create a DFS3650I TSS table that specifies DFS3650I message replacements by terminal type | See “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table” on page 400 or “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.
Create the user formats that will replace the DFS3649A and DFS3650I messages | See IBM’s documentation for IMS for information on creating user formats.
Implement your customizations | Start the IMS control region, or refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions on performing a refresh.

Sample Logon Configurations

This section provides information and instructions on how you can use ETA to quickly customize logon processing to one of three sample configurations.

These configurations assume that you have already installed ETO and ETA and have performed basic IMS system customizations by using ETA. Use the information and instructions in this section as a basis for refining your logon processing.

Sample Logon Configuration 1

Company EEE has just installed a session manager and wants its employees to sign on once through the session manager and to pass that signon information to IMS.

The options for this configuration may be summarized as follows:

- Session manager is used
- Propagate user ID from session manager to IMS
- Propagate password from session manager to IMS

Sample Logon Configuration 2

Company FFF has just merged with another company.

With the introduction of the computing network from the company that merged with Company FFF, several new sets of terminal attributes must be supported.
Company FFF now has additional logon descriptors and must support SLU2 terminals. Because of the new descriptors, Company FFF wants to modify the descriptor selection algorithm. The SLU2 terminals must have an ALOT equal to 30 minutes, an ASOT interval equal to 60 minutes, and a 24-row by 80-column screen size.

The options for this configuration may be summarized as follows:

- Multiple descriptors
- The standard descriptor selection algorithm is not optimal
- SLU2 terminals with the following attributes:
  - ALOT equals 30
  - ASOT equals 60
  - Screen size is 24 rows by 80 columns

Sample Logon Configuration 3

Company GGG uses the TSS logon options to specify terminal attributes.

Its system programmers have created a new logon descriptor that they want to use. Company GGG wants to use a second logon TSS table to specify which nodes will use this new descriptor. Because the table that provides information on use of the new descriptor contains the exceptions to standard logon processing for the company, this table should be searched first.

The options for this configuration may be summarized as follows:

- TSS logon option already specifies terminal attributes
- Second logon TSS table specifies use of a new logon descriptor for certain nodes

Task Instructions for Sample Logon Configurations

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample logon configurations:

- “Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 1” on page 365
Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 1

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

Figure 140: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 1

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

Configure the session manager to pass user ID and password information in the VTAM USERDATA.

Review the format of your VTAM USERDATA to determine the positions of the user ID and password.

To Implement Logon Configuration 1

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Logon heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

4. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
5 Activate the option that propagates user ID information from a session manager to IMS.

   a Type an S in the Propagate userid to IMS field and press Enter. The Userid Processing pop-up window is displayed.

   b Complete the Userid Processing pop-up window. Type 1 in the selection field, type 1 in the Position for userid field, and press F3.

6 Activate the logon option that propagates password information from a session manager to IMS.

   a Type an S in the Propagate password to IMS field and press Enter. The Password Processing pop-up window is displayed.

   b Complete the Password Processing pop-up window. Type 1 in the selection field, type 10 in the Position for password field, and press F3.

7 Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

8 Save your changes.

   a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

   b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

   c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 2

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 141: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 2**

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

You must create an ETA default descriptor. If you create the descriptor before performing this task, record the descriptor name for use in this task. In this sample configuration, the descriptor name is ETADESCR.

**To Implement Logon Configuration 2**

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.
2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.
3. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Logon heading to activate ETA Logon processing.
4. Go to the Logon Options - Terminal Type panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Terminal type item under the Logon heading, and press Enter. The Logon Options - Terminal Type panel is displayed.
5. Specify the descriptor selection algorithm for SLU2 terminals.
   a. Choose a terminal type. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to SLU2 and press Enter.
b Type 1 in the **Descriptor with same name as LU name** field.

c Type 2 in the **ETA default descriptor name** ETA field, and type **ETADESCR** in the **name** field.

d Type 3 in the **IMS default descriptor** field.

e Type 4 in the **Descriptor specified after LOGOND keyword** field.

6 Specify the ALOT, ASOT, and screen size for SLU2 terminals.

   a Specify the ALOT interval for this type of terminal. Type 1 in the selection field under the **Autologoff** heading, and type 30 in the **minutes** field.

   b Specify the ASOT interval for this type of terminal. Type 1 in the selection field under the **Autosignoff** heading, and type 60 in the **minutes** field.

   c Specify the screen size. Type 2 in the selection field under the heading **Screen size** and press **F3**. This is the 24 x 80 option, which is the screen size that corresponds to a model 2.

   d Press **F3**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

7 Save your changes.

   a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press **F3**. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

   b Type 1 in the selection field and press **Enter**. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

   c Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Select the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the ETA default descriptor</td>
<td>See IBM’s ETO documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 3

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

Figure 142: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Logon Configuration 3

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

This sample configuration assumes that a LOGONTYP TSS table is already in use to specify terminal attributes.

To Implement Logon Configuration 3

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Logon** heading to activate ETA Logon processing.

4. Go to the **Logon Options – TSS Options** panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the **Logon** heading, and press **Enter**. The **Logon Options - TSS Options** panel is displayed.

5. Specify that two TSS tables will be used to provide logon options.

It is assumed that a LOGONTYP TSS table is currently used to specify logon options.
a Specify the TSS table search order and the TSS table names. Type 1 in the Logon node name TSS table name field, and type the TSS table name in the appropriate name field. Type 2 in the Logon terminal type TSS table name field. It is assumed that a LOGONTYP TSS table is already in use, so the TSS table name for the LOGONTYP table should be correct.

b Specify processing options. Type 1 in both selection fields under the heading Table 1 processing options heading. Type 1 in the first selection field under the Table 2 processing options heading, type 2 in the table field on the same line (so that the option reads "If successful, use table 2 data"), and type 2 in the second selection field under the same heading.

c Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

6 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a LOGONNOD TSS table that specifies terminal attributes for nodes that require a special logon descriptor</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample Autosignon Configurations

This section provides information and instructions on how you can use ETA to quickly customize Autosignon processing to one of three sample configurations. All
options available for signon processing are also available through the ETA Autosignon feature.

If your installation does not require signon, you can use the ETA Autosignon feature to specify all the options that ETO requires to create dynamic terminals.

**Sample Autosignon Configuration 1**

Company HHH does not require signon for access to IMS.

To accommodate special requirements, the company has created many user descriptors based on node names and a smaller number of user descriptors based on user IDs. Company HHH uses a session manager and can configure it to pass user ID information in the VTAM USERDATA. In all other cases, the IMS default descriptor will be used. The company does not want to use the standard IMS descriptor search algorithm but wants IMS to look for a node name descriptor first, then search for a user ID descriptor, and use the IMS default descriptor if both of those searches fail. The company does not use the USERD keyword in USERDATA.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Signon is not required
- Propagate user ID from VTAM USERDATA (ETA logon option)
- Search first for node name user descriptor
- Search second for user ID user descriptor
- IMS default descriptor should be used if first two searches fail
- USERD keyword in USERDATA is not used and should not be included in descriptor search algorithm

**Sample Autosignon Configuration 2**

Company JJJ does not require signon. Many employees with this company use PCs to access IMS through a dial-up procedure.

The company uses many conversational applications; so when employees log on, the company wants the system to automatically /EXIT all conversations and /DEQUEUE all messages that remain from the previous session.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:
Sample Autosignon Configuration 3

This topic describes Sample Autosignon Configuration 3.

This configuration is based on the logon configuration described in “Sample Logon Configuration 3” on page 364.

Company EEE does not require signon. The company has just installed a session manager. Company EEE wants its employees to sign on once through the session manager and have that signon information passed to IMS. The company has set logon options available through ETA defaults so that user ID and password information will be propagated from the session manager to IMS.

When the user ID is available from the session manager, Company EEE wants to use the TSS Autosignon option to specify options based on the user ID. If the user ID is not available, the company wants to use the TSS Autosignon option to specify options based on the node name.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Signon is not required
- If the user ID is available, search the user ID Autosignon TSS table
- If the user ID is not available, search the node name Autosignon TSS table

Task Instructions for Sample Autosignon Configurations

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample autosignon configurations:

- “Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 1” on page 373
- “Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 2” on page 374
- “Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 3” on page 376
Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 1

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 143: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 1**

Before you begin

This task assumes that you have used ETA to perform basic customizations on an IMS system and that node name and user ID descriptors have already been created.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Implement Autosignon Configuration 1**

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   - From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   - Verify or change the IMSID.
   - From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (\/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the Autosignon heading to activate ETA Autosignon processing.

4. Go to the Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (\/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the Autosignon heading, and press **Enter**. The Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.

5. Specify the descriptor selection algorithm.
   - Type 3 in the **IMS DFSUSER default descriptor** field.
   - Type 1 in the **Descriptor with same name as node name** field.
c  Type 2 in the **Descriptor with same name as userid** field.

d  Type a blank in the **Descriptor specified after the USERD keyword** field. Typing a blank in this field indicates that a descriptor with the name found after the USERD keyword in the VTAM USERDATA should be excluded from the descriptor selection algorithm.

e  Press **F3**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

6  Save your changes.

   a  From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press **F3**. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

   b  Type **1** in the selection field and press **Enter**. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

   c  Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 2**

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

*Figure 144: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 2*
**Before you begin**

This task assumes that you have used ETA to perform basic customizations on an IMS system.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Implement Autosignon Configuration 2**

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Autosignon** heading to activate ETA Autosignon processing.

4. Go to the **Autosignon Options - ETA Defaults** panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **Defaults** item under the **Autosignon** heading, and press **Enter**. The **Autosignon Options - ETA Defaults** panel is displayed.

5. Activate the option that causes ETA to automatically /EXIT conversations from a previous session when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses the same LTERM as a terminal that previously existed.

   Type a slash (/) in the **/EXIT conversations from previous session(s)** field.

6. Activate the option that causes ETA to automatically /DEQUEUE all messages assigned to an LTERM that still exists from a previous session when IMS creates a dynamic terminal that uses the same LTERM as a terminal that previously existed.

   Type a slash (/) in the **/DEQ messages from previous session(s)** field.

7. Press **F3**. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

8. Save your changes.
a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 3

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

Figure 145: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Autosignon Configuration 3

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement Autosignon Configuration 3

1 Invoke the ETA online interface.

2 Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.

   b Verify or change the IMSID.
c From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3 From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Autosignon heading to activate ETA Autosignon processing.

4 Choose Autosignon TSS Options.

a Go to the Autosignon Options - TSS Options panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the TSS Options item under the Autosignon heading, and press Enter. The Autosignon Options - TSS Options panel is displayed.

b Specify that ETA should search the AUTOSIGN TSS table that contains information by user ID, if the user ID is available. Type 2 in the selection field under the TSS argument option heading.

c Specify the names of the two AUTOSIGN TSS tables. Type the name of each TSS table in the appropriate name field.

d Specify that signon should be required if both TSS table searches are unsuccessful. Type 1 in the selection field under the Table processing heading.

e Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample Signon Configurations

This section provides information and instructions on how you can use ETA to quickly customize signon processing to one of three sample configurations.

These configurations assume that you have already installed ETO and ETA and have performed basic IMS system customizations by using ETA. Use the information and instructions in this section as a basis for refining your signon processing.

Sample Signon Configuration 1

Company EEE has just started using a session manager, but many employees have the same user ID. The company wants to allow an unlimited number of signons per user ID.

This configuration is based on the logon configuration described in “Sample Logon Configuration 1” on page 363.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Signon is required
- Allow multiple signons per user ID

Sample Signon Configuration 2

Company LLL uses the IMS message switching exit (DFSCNTE0) on static terminals and wants to use this exit for dynamic terminals.
Company LLL does not want LTERM and user structures (control blocks) deleted after a user signs off. When employees sign on, the company wants the terminals to deactivate the response mode setting from the previous sessions.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Signon is required
- Use DFSCNTE0 for dynamic terminals
- LTERM and user structures should not be deleted at signoff
- Deactivate response mode status from previous session

**Sample Signon Configuration 3**

Company MMM has recently started requiring signon. The company wants to use the signon TSS option to determine the LTERM name for terminals based on the user ID. If the user ID is not found in the signon TSS table, the company wants the signon rejected.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Signon is required
- Use signon TSS table to specify LTERM name based on user ID
- If signon TSS table search is unsuccessful, reject signon

**Task Instructions for Sample Signon Configurations**

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample signon configurations:

- “Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 1” on page 380
- “Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 2” on page 381
- “Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 3” on page 383
# Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 1

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 146: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 1**

![Panel Flow Diagram](image)

**Before you begin**

This task assumes that you have used ETA to perform basic customizations on an IMS system.

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Implement Signon Configuration 1**

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.
2. Go to the **Edit IMSID Options** panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press Enter. The **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press Enter. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.
3. From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Signon** heading to activate ETA Signon processing.
4. Go to the **Signon Options - LTERM/USER Options** panel and activate the option that allows multiple signons per user ID.
   a. Go to the **Signon Options – LTERM/USER Options** panel. From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the LTERM/User name item under the **Signon** heading, and press Enter. The **Signon Options - LTERM/USER Options** panel is displayed.
   b. Specify that LTERM and user names should equal the user ID. Type 1 in the selection field under the **LTERM/USER option** heading.
c Type a slash (/) in the **Allow multiple signons per userid** field.

d Specify the type of suffixing ETA should perform to create the additional user IDs. Type 2 in the **Suffixing type** field to choose the hexadecimal suffixing type.

e Specify the maximum number of signons per user ID. Type 9999 in the **Maximum sessions per userid** field.

f Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5 Save your changes.

a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 2**

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 147: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 2**
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement Signon Configuration 2

1 Invoke the ETA online interface.

2 Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b Verify or change the IMSID.
   c From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3 From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Signon heading to activate ETA Signon processing.

4 Go to the Signon Options – ETA Defaults panel, and activate the following options:
   a Go to the Signon Options – ETA Defaults panel. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Signon heading, and press Enter. The Signon Options - ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
   b Activate the option that deactivates the response mode from previous sessions. Type a slash (/) in the Deactivate response mode from previous session field.
   c Activate the option that causes ETA to use the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0. Type a slash (/) in the Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERM(s) field.
   d Activate the option that causes ETA to prevent user and LTERM structures from being deleted at signoff. Type a slash (/) in the Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff field.
   e Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5 Save your changes.
a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, press **F3**. The **Confirm Save** pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press **Enter**. ETA saves your changes and displays the **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel.

c Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 3**

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 148: Panel Flow – Implementing Sample Signon Configuration 3**

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Implement Signon Configuration 3**

1 Invoke the ETA online interface.

2 Go to the **Edit IMSID Options** panel and verify the IMSID.

   a From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel is displayed.

   b Verify or change the IMSID.
c From the **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

3 From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **Signon** heading to activate ETA Signon processing.

4 Go to the **Signon Options – TSS Options** panel.

a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **TSS Options** item under the **Signon** heading, and press **Enter**. The **Signon Options - TSS Options** panel is displayed.

b Specify that the TSS table should be searched by node name and specify the TSS table name. Type 1 in the selection field for the **Signon node name TSS table name** field under the heading **TSS table search order** and type the TSS table name in the associated **name** field.

c Specify that ETA defaults should be used if the TSS table search fails. Under the Table 1 processing options heading, type 1 in the first selection field and type 2 in the second selection field.

d Press **F3**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.

5 Save your changes.

a From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, press **F3**. The **Confirm Save** pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press **Enter**. ETA saves your changes and displays the **IMSID/Group Options** Entry panel.

c Press **F3** to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a SIGNON TSS table that specifies LTERM names</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample DFS3649A and DFS3650I Replacements

You can use ETA to quickly customize DFS3649A processing to one of two sample configurations. These configurations assume that you have already installed ETO and have performed basic IMS system customizations using ETA.

Sample DFS3649A Configuration

This table serves two purposes. First, during normal logon processing, company MMM wants to replace the DFS3649A message with the following options:

- User format for 3270 terminals
- DFS2002 message for SLUP terminals

Second, the company also wants to display a special user format to help users complete signon if signon fails and a user message to help users sign on after an autosignoff.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- During standard logon processing, replace the DFS3649A message with the following options:
  - user format for 3270 terminals
  - DFS2002 message for SLUP terminals
- After a failed signon attempt, replace the DFS3649A message with a user format.
- After an autosignoff, replace the DFS3649A message with a user message.

Sample DFS3649A/DFS3650I Configuration

Company OOO wants to replace the DFS3649A message with the following options:

- User format for SLU2 terminals
- User message for SLUP terminals
- Blank screen for ISC terminals
The company wants to replace the DFS3650I message with the following options:

- Blank screen for FINANCE terminals
- Log off SLU1 and 3286 terminals

Because Company OOO already uses a LOGONTYP TSS table to specify logon options, the company wants to use the same table to specify these DFS3649A and DFS3650I replacements.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- DFS3649A message replacements:
  - User format for SLU2 terminals
  - User message for SLUP terminals
  - Blank screen for ISC terminals
- DFS3650I message replacements:
  - Blank screen for FINANCE terminals
  - Log off SLU1 and 3286 terminals

Task Instructions for Sample DFS3649A/DFS3650I Replacements

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample DFS3649A and DFS3650I configurations:

- “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A Configuration” on page 387
- “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A and DFS3650I Configuration” on page 388
Implementing the Sample DFS3649A Configuration

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

**Figure 149: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample DFS3649A Configuration**

![Diagram of panel flow for implementing DFS3649A](image)

**Before you begin**

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

**To Implement the Sample DFS3649A Configuration**

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.
2. Go to the **Edit IMSID Options** panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the **ETA Main Menu**, type 5 in the **Selection** field and press **Enter**. The **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the **IMSID/Group Options Entry** panel, type 1 in the **Selection** field with the IMSID specified in the **IMSID or Group** field and press **Enter**. The **Edit IMSID Options** panel is displayed.
3. From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the **Inactive** selection field to the right of the **DFS3649A** heading to activate ETA DFS3649A processing.
4. Go to the **DFS3649A Message Options - TSS Options** panel.
   a. From the **Edit IMSID Options** panel, type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the **TSS Options** item under the **DFS3649A** heading, and press **Enter**. The **DFS3649A Message Options – TSS Options** panel is displayed.
   b. Specify the TSS table name. Type the TSS table name in the **TSS table name** field under the **Dynamic terminals** heading.
   c. Specify the TSS table type. Type 1 in the **TSS table type** field under the **Dynamic terminals** heading to choose DFS3649A.
d. Specify how ETA should search the TSS table. Type 1 in the Terminal type field and type 2 in the Reason for message field under the Dynamic terminals heading.

e. Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

5. Save your changes.

a. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b. Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c. Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a DFS3649A TSS table that</td>
<td>See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uses 493270 and 49SLUP as terminal</td>
<td>“Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table” on page 400 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type arguments and 49FAIL and 49SOFF</td>
<td>as reason code arguments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Implementing the Sample DFS3649A and DFS3650I Configuration

Use the following instructions to implement the features described below.

Figure 150: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample DFS3649A/DFS3650I Configuration
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement the Sample DFS3649A/DFS3650I Configuration

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Use the Edit Table panel to add DFS3649A and DFS3650I replacement information to the existing LOGONTYP TSS table that specifies logon options for this IMS system.

   Since a LOGONTYP TSS table already exists, by updating this table and refreshing the TSS table data in the IMS control region, you can specify DFS3649A and DFS3650I replacements without using the DFS3649A and/or DFS3650I panels available through ETA IMSID option.

   See “Editing or Browsing a TSS Table” on page 210 for instructions on editing a TSS table.

3. Refresh the TSS table data in the IMS control region.

   From the Translate Sub-System panel, type 12 in the Translate Sub-System Option field and press Enter. ETA refreshes the TSS data in the IMS control region.

Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample TSS Table Configurations

This section provides information on how you can use ETA online facilities to quickly create TSS table entries that specify IMS customization options. This section assumes that you have installed ETO and ETA.

This section also assumes that you have allocated and formatted a TSS data set and have performed basic IMS system customizations by using ETA, including specification of the TSS data set name on the IMSID Options - Translate Sub-System Panel.
(TSS) options panel. See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for information and instructions on creating TSS data sets.

The instructions in this section show you how to create entries for an UNSOLOUT (Unsolicited Output) TSS table, a LOGONTYP (logon by terminal type) TSS table, and a DFS3649A (DFS3649A replacement) TSS table. These are representative TSS table types; TSS tables for logon, signon, and autosignon are very similar to each other, and TSS tables for DFS3649A and DFS3650I replacement are also very similar to each other.

Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table

This topic describes the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table.

This configuration is based on the Unsolicited Output configuration described in “Sample IMS System Configuration 4” on page 341.

The following contains the names of unknown destinations that can be created through the Unsolicited Output feature. Unknown destinations are created by using options specified through ETA defaults.

Table 9: Unknown Destinations for Sample Unsolicited Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unknown Destination</th>
<th>Data for TSS table Result fields</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L12345</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Allows LTERMs named L12345, DX2222, and DX3333 to be created using options specified through ETA defaults and/or IMS defaults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DX2222</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DX3333</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Allows all LTERMs that begin with the characters PR to be created using options specified through ETA defaults and/or IMS defaults</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following contains the printer LTERM names that Company DDD uses and the options that are specified for each type of printer. The TSS table contains the LTERM names and parameters to be used in the creation of printer LTERMs.

Table 10: Printer Attributes for Sample Unsolicited Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Printer LTERM Name</th>
<th>Component Input</th>
<th>Component Output</th>
<th>Upper/LowerCase</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>Autologon Node</th>
<th>Autologon Desc</th>
<th>Autologon MODETBL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABCDEFG</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>N1111</td>
<td>DFSSLU1</td>
<td>MT0011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIJKLNM</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>N2222</td>
<td>DFS327P</td>
<td>MT0022</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Some unknown destinations can be created
- Multiple printer models and options for each type of printer

**Sample Logon TSS Table**

This topic describes the Sample Logon TSS Table.

This configuration is based on the logon configuration described in “Sample IMS System Configuration 2” on page 339, although entries in this TSS table can also be used for the existing logon table described in “Sample Logon Configuration 3” on page 364.

Company BBB uses SLU2, 3270, and SLUP terminals with several screen models used for each terminal type. The TSS table will be used to specify all terminal attributes. In some cases, the TSS table will change screen model information for terminals because some VTAM definitions are incorrect.

The following table lists some terminal attributes.

**Table 11: Terminal Attributes for Sample Logon TSS Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VTAM Data</th>
<th>Attributes to be Specified Through TSS Table</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Terminal Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pri.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLU2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- Multiple terminal models per terminal type
- All terminal attributes specified through TSS

### Sample DFS3649A TSS Table

This topic describes the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table.

This configuration is based on the DFS3649A configuration described in “Sample DFS3649A Configuration” on page 385, although entries in this TSS table could also be used for the DFS3649A configuration described in “Sample IMS System Configuration 4” on page 341.

This table serves two purposes. First, during normal logon processing, company MMM wants to replace the DFS3649A message with the following options:

- User format for SLU2 terminals
- DFS2002 message for SLUP terminals

Second, Company MMM also wants to display a special user format to help users complete signon if signon fails and a user message to help users sign on after an autosignoff.

The options for this configuration are summarized as follows:

- During standard logon processing, choose either of the following DFS3649A message replacement options:
  - User format for SLU2 terminals
  - DFS2002 message for SLUP terminals
- After a failed signon attempt, replace the DFS3649A message with a user format.
- After an autosignoff, replace the DFS3649A message with a user message.

Task Instructions for Sample TSS Table Configurations

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample TSS table configurations:

- “Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table” on page 393
- “Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table” on page 396
- “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table” on page 400

Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table

For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table” on page 390.

Figure 151: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table
Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to edit TSS tables. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To perform this TSS task, you must have allocated a TSS data set - see “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 for instructions

To Implement the Sample Unsolicited Output TSS Table

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Translate Sub-System panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

3. Specify basic information about the TSS data set and the TSS table and go to the Translate Sub-System - Define a Table pop-up window to create a new TSS table.

   a. Type 4 in the Selection field.

   b. Type the name of the TSS table you want to define in the Table name field. In this case, type UNKNPTR.

   c. Verify or change the TSS data set name and disposition.

   d. Press Enter. The Translate Sub-System – Define a Table pop-up window is displayed.

4. Create a new UNSOLOUT TSS table.

   a. Specify the TSS table type. Move the cursor to the Table type field and press F4. A pop-up window presents a selection list of TSS table types. Type a slash (/) beside the TSS table type you want and press Enter. In this case, select UNSOLOUT.

   b. If you want to provide a note about the table, type this information in the Table title field. In this case, type UNKNOWN DESTINATIONS & PRINTERS.

   c. Specify the argument length. Type the argument length in the Argument field. In this case, the argument length is 8 bytes.

   d. Specify the result length. Type the result length in the Result field. In this case, the result length is 152 bytes.
e Specify the default free space percentage. Type the default free space percentage in the Default free-space field. In this case, set the default free space percentage to 30 percent.

f Specify that wildcard masking will be allowed. Type 2 in the selection field under the heading Search/masking option.

g Press Enter. ETA prompts you to verify the data.

h Press Enter again. ETA accepts the data.

i Press F3. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

5 Go to the Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel.

a Type 1 in the Selection field.

b Verify or change the following:

- the TSS table name
- the TSS data set name
- the TSS data set disposition

c Press Enter. The Translate Sub-System – Formatted Table Edit panel is displayed.

6 Create entries in the UNSOLOUT TSS table for unknown destinations.

a Type ADD in the Command field of the Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel and press Enter. A blank row is inserted into the table.

b Type the LTERM name in the Argument field. The following table provides LTERM names that you can use to create four TSS table entries. After you type each LTERM name from the table, press Enter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TSS Table Entry for Unknown Destinations</th>
<th>LTERM Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>L12345</td>
<td>Allows L12345 to be created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>DX2222</td>
<td>Allows DX2222 to be created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>DX3333</td>
<td>Allows DX3333 to be created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>PR*</td>
<td>Allows all LTERMs that start with PR to be created</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c Press F3. The Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel is displayed.

7 Create entries in the UNSOLOUT TSS table for printers.

a Type ADD in the Command field of the Edit Table panel and press Enter. The New Table Entry panel is displayed.

b Create TSS table entries. The following table shows the fields you would complete and the data you would specify to implement this sample configuration. Each line in the table represents one TSS table entry. After you type the data for each line of the table, press Enter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Inpt Cmpt</th>
<th>Outp Cmpt</th>
<th>Uppr Case</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>Auto Nodename</th>
<th>Node Desc</th>
<th>MODETBL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABCDEFG</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>N1111</td>
<td>DFSSLU1</td>
<td>MT0011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIJKLMN</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>N2222</td>
<td>DFS327P</td>
<td>MT0022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPQRSTU</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N3333</td>
<td>DFSSLU1</td>
<td>MT0011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VWXYZ12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>N4444</td>
<td>DFSSLUP</td>
<td>MT0033</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Press F3. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

Where to go from here

Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the Sample Logon TSS Table.
For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample Logon TSS Table” on page 391.

Figure 152: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample Logon TSS Table

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to edit TSS tables. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To perform this TSS task, you must have created a TSS data set – see “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 for instructions.

Note

This task assumes that the TSS data set allows pattern masking.

To Implement the Sample Logon TSS Table

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Translate Sub-System panel.

   From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

3. Specify basic information about the TSS data set and the TSS table and go to the Translate Sub-System - Define a Table pop-up window.

   a. Type 4 in the Selection field.
b Type the name of the TSS table you want to define in the **Table name** field. In this case, type **LGNBYTYP**.

c Verify or change the TSS data set name and disposition.

d Press **Enter**. The **Translate Sub-System – Define a Table** pop-up window is displayed.

4 Create a new LOGONTYP TSS table.

   a Specify the TSS table type. Move the cursor to the **Table type** field and press **F4**. A pop-up window presents a selection list of TSS table types. Type a slash (/) beside the TSS table type you want and press **Enter**. In this case, select **LOGONTYP**.

   b If you want to provide a note about the table, type this information in the **Table title** field. In this case, type **LOGON TABLE BY TERMINAL TYPE**.

   c Specify the argument length. Type the argument length in the **Argument** field. In this case, the argument length is 8 bytes.

   d Specify the result length. Type the result length in the **Result** field. In this case, the result length is 76 bytes.

   e Specify the default free space percentage. Type the default free space percentage in the **Default free-space** field. In this case, set the default free space percentage to 30 percent.

   f Specify that wildcard masking will be allowed. Type **2** in the selection field under the heading **Search/masking option**.

   g Press **Enter**. ETA prompts you to verify the data.

   h Press **Enter** again. ETA accepts the data.

   i Press **F3**. The **Translate Sub-System** panel is displayed.

5 Go to the **Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit** panel.

   a Type **1** in the **Selection** field.

   b Verify or change the following:

      ■ The TSS table name
      ■ The TSS data set name
      ■ The TSS data set disposition
c Press Enter. The Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel is displayed.

6 Create TSS table entries.

--- Note ---
This step assumes that the TSS data set allows pattern masking. To perform this replacement without pattern masking, you would need to create one table entry for every combination of primary and alternate screen sizes used with each type of terminal on your system.

a Type ADD in the Command field of the Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel and press Enter. A blank row is inserted into the table.

b Create TSS table entries.

The following table shows the fields you would complete and the data you would specify to implement this sample configuration. Each line in the following table represents one TSS table entry. After you type the data for each line of the table, press Enter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Desc Name</th>
<th>ALOT</th>
<th>ASOT</th>
<th>TermModl</th>
<th>1st Desc</th>
<th>2nd Desc</th>
<th>3rd Desc</th>
<th>ETA Desc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLU22*</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ETASLU2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLU25*</td>
<td>DFSSLU2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLU20*</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ETASLU2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32702*</td>
<td>DFS3270</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32705*</td>
<td>DFS32701</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32700*</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ETASLU2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

--- Note ---
Instead of naming a logon descriptor in the third and sixth lines of the table, the 1st Desc, 2nd Desc and 3rd Desc fields are used to modify the descriptor search algorithm. In these fields, E indicates the ETA default descriptor, V indicates a node name descriptor, and I indicates the IMS default descriptor.

7 Press F3. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

Where to go from here

Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.
Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table

Use the following instructions to implement the features described in “Sample DFS3649A TSS Table” on page 392.

Figure 153: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to edit TSS tables. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To perform this TSS task, you must have created a TSS data set – see “Allocating and Formatting a TSS Data Set” on page 176 for instructions.

You must have activated the DFS3649A TSS option and specified that the TSS table be searched in one of the following ways:

- Search by terminal type and by reason for message, as described in “Implementing the Sample DFS3649A Configuration” on page 387.

- Search by terminal type only, as described in “Implementing Sample IMS System Configuration 4” on page 357.

To Implement the Sample DFS3649A TSS Table

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Translate Sub-System panel.
From the ETA Main Menu, type 1 in the Selection field and press Enter. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

3 Specify basic information about the TSS data set and the TSS table, and go to the Translate Sub-System - Define a Table pop-up window.
   a Type 4 in the Selection field.
   b Type the name of the TSS table you want to define in the Table name field. In this case, type DFS49TR.
   c Verify or change the TSS data set name and disposition.
   d Press Enter. The Translate Sub-System - Define a Table pop-up window is displayed.

4 Create a new DFS3649A TSS table.
   a Specify the TSS table type. Move the cursor to the Table type field and press F4. A pop-up window presents a selection list of TSS table types. Type a slash (/) beside the TSS table type you want and press Enter. In this case, select DFS3649A.
   b If you want to provide a note about the table, type this information in the Table title field. In this case, type DFS3649A, BY TERM. TYPE & REASON.
   c Specify the argument length. Type the argument length in the Argument field. In this case, the argument length is 8 bytes.
   d Specify the result length. Type the result length in the Result field. In this case, the result length is 8 bytes.
   e Specify the default free space percentage. Type the default free space percentage in the Default free-space field. In this case, set the default free space percentage to 30 percent.
   f Specify whether masking will be allowed. In this case, type 2 in the selection field under the heading Search/masking option. This allows pattern masking in the TSS table.
   g Press Enter. ETA prompts you to verify the data.
   h Press Enter again. ETA accepts the data.
   i Press F3. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.

5 Go to the Translate Sub-System – Formatted Table Edit panel.
a Type 1 in the Selection field.

b Verify or change the following:

- The TSS table name
- The TSS data set name
- The TSS data set disposition

c Press Enter. The Translate Sub-System – Formatted Table Edit panel is displayed.

6 Create TSS table entries.

**Note**

There are two considerations with respect to screen sizes when the argument is a terminal type:

- The last character in the argument is the screen size. Although VTAM provides information on primary and alternate screen sizes, IMS uses only one screen size. Since the DFS3649A TSS option uses information from IMS, only one screen size is required in the argument for this type of TSS table.

- To perform this replacement without pattern masking, you would need to create one table entry for each type of terminal used on your system. For example, you might need an entry for 3270 terminals that use model 2 for the screen size and another entry for 3270 terminals that use model 4 for the screen size.

a Type ADD in the Command field of the Translate Sub-System - Formatted Table Edit panel and press Enter. A blank row is inserted into the table.

b Create TSS table entries with the following data. Each line in the following table represents one TSS table entry. At the end of each line, press Enter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49SLU2*</td>
<td>ABCDEFG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49SLUP*</td>
<td>BLANKSCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49FAIL</td>
<td>XXYYYYYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49SOFF</td>
<td>USERMSG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c Press F3. The Translate Sub-System panel is displayed.
Where to go from here

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the user message you need</td>
<td>See “Editing User Messages and Signon Return Code Text” on page 311 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample ISC Configurations

This section provides information and instructions on how you can use ETA to quickly implement ISC communication connections for IMS. Two sample IMS-to-IMS ISC configurations are described.

Consider the following restrictions when implementing dynamic ISC connections:

- The USER/LTERM names that ETA will build dynamically cannot exist in the IMS GEN. If the USER/LTERM names are still present in the IMS GEN, you will receive the following error message:

  DFS2085I SESSION TERMINATED, SIGN ON FAILURE RC=5208 or RC=260

- If IMS systems are communicating through a dynamic IMS ISC connection, the associated IMS VTAM APPLID must have the correct VTAM mode table to allow LU6.1 communications.

If you have statically defined an IMS ISC connection at your site, you may use the same IMS VTAM APPLID configuration when you dynamically define the IMS ISC connection through ETA. If you have not previously defined an IMS VTAM APPLID configuration for ISC, the following figure provides a sample configuration.

Figure 154: Sample IMS VTAM APPLID Configuration for ISC Capability

```
ISCMODE MODETAB
ISCIMS MODEENT LOGMODE=ISCIMS,
FMPROF=X'12',
TSPROF=X'04',
PRIPROT=X'81',
SECPROT=X'81',
COMPRT=X'70A0',
RUSIZES=X'8686',
PSNDPAC=X'FF',
SRCVPAC=X'FF',
SSNDPAC=X'FF',
PSERVIC=X'060038000003800000000000',
TYPE=D
```
If the IMS VTAM mode table entry is not correctly configured for ISC capability, you will receive the following error message:

DFS2062I MODE TABLE ENTRY NAME UNKNOWN TO VTAM

Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration

Specify the following options to configure dynamic ISC connections through the ETA Unsolicited Output feature:

- Enable ETA Unsolicited Output processing.
- Specify options to use an UNSOLOUT TSS table to define an ISC connection between IMS systems.

Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration

Specify the following options to configure dynamic ISC connections through the ETA Autosignon feature:

- Enable ETA Autosignon processing.
- Specify ISC as a terminal type that will be eligible for ETA Autosignon through the ETA Autosignon options.

Task Instructions for Sample ISC Configurations

See the following sections for instructions on implementing sample ISC configurations:

- “Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration” on page 405
- “Implementing the Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration” on page 406
Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration.

For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration” on page 404.

Figure 155: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement the Sample Unsolicited Output ISC Configuration

1 Invoke the ETA online interface.

2 Use the Translate Sub-System – Formatted Table Edit panel to add ISC configuration information to an existing UNSOLOUT TSS table.

See “Editing or Browsing a TSS Table” on page 210 for instructions on editing a TSS table.

Complete the following UNSOLOUT TSS table fields to configure ISC connections:

- **ARG** field—Specify the LTERM that you want to create.
  A valid value for this field is an 8 byte LTERM name.
- **User Name** field—Specify a USER name other than the node name or the user ID. This field is optional.

A valid value for this field is an 8 byte USER name. If wildcard masking has been allowed for the TSS table, the *Argument Propagation* feature can be used in this field.

- **AutoLogn Nodename** field—Specify the IMSID of the IMS system to which you are making the ISC connection.

  **Note**

  If multiple ISC definitions are present in an IMS GEN, there may be multiple DFSLU61 logon descriptors. The Node Desc field may be used to specify the correct logon descriptor for this connection.

- **Modetabl** field—Specify the name of the VTAM mode table that should be used when creating the terminal associated with this USER.

  A valid value for this field is an 8 byte VTAM mode table name. The VTAM mode table name must match the VTAM ISC mode table name. Normally, the VTAM ISC mode table has the same name as the IMS mode table.

- **ISC ID** field—Specify the ISC name.

  The ISC name is the USER name that is created on the IMS system to which you are making the ISC connection.

3. Press **F3** twice to return to the ETA Main Menu.

**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Start the IMS control region, or refresh the TSS tables. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing the Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration**

Use the following procedure to implement the features in the Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration.
For a detailed description of the sample configuration, see “Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration” on page 404.

Figure 156: Panel Flow – Implementing the Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration

Before you begin

A user access profile must give you authority to specify or change data for the appropriate IMSIDs. Contact your ETA system administrator.

To Implement the Sample Autosignon ISC Configuration

1. Invoke the ETA online interface.

2. Go to the Edit IMSID Options panel and verify the IMSID.
   a. From the ETA Main Menu, type 5 in the Selection field and press Enter. The IMSID/Group Options Entry panel is displayed.
   b. Verify or change the IMSID.
   c. From the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel, type 1 in the Selection field with the IMSID specified in the IMSID or Group field and press Enter. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

3. Specify ISC as a terminal type that will be eligible for ETA Autosignon.
   a. From the Edit IMSID Options panel, type a slash (/) in the Inactive selection field to the right of the Autosignon heading to activate ETA Autosignon processing.
   b. Go to the Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel. Type a slash (/) in the selection field next to the Defaults item under the Autosignon heading, and press Enter. The Autosignon Options – ETA Defaults panel is displayed.
   c. Specify that ISC terminals should attempt Autosignon. Type a slash (/) in the ISC field under the Specify the terminal types that will attempt autosignon heading.
   d. Press F3. The Edit IMSID Options panel is displayed.

4. Save your changes.
a From the Edit IMSID Options panel, press F3. The Confirm Save pop-up window is displayed.

b Type 1 in the selection field and press Enter. ETA saves your changes and displays the IMSID/Group Options Entry panel.

c Press F3 to return to the ETA Main Menu.

5 Initiate the ISC connection between IMS systems.

The following example illustrates the command that is issued to make an ISC connection between IMS systems named IMSA and IMSB:

From IMSA, issue the following command:

```
/OPN NODE IMSB USER xx ID yy
```

(where xx is the username on IMSA and yy is the username on IMSB).

6 Verify that the connection has been made.

■ From IMSA, enter the following command to verify the connection:

```
/DIS NODE IMSB
```

If the connection has been made, the following command output will be generated from IMSA:

```
IMSB     LUT6
-XX      20000021   0   0   0   0   0 SIGN(XX)
IDLE CON PRI
```

■ From IMSB, enter the following command to verify the connection:

```
/DIS NODE IMSA
```

If the connection has been made, the following command output will be generated from IMSB:

```
IMSA     LUT6
-YY      E0000047   0   0   0   0   0 SIGN(YY)
IDLE CON SEC
```

7 If you require additional ISC connections, repeat Step 5 on page 408 and Step 6 on page 408.

---

**Note**

There is no restriction on the number of parallel ISC sessions in an ETA environment other than the amount of storage available to IMS.
**Where to go from here**

If this were your actual configuration, you could do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to...</th>
<th>Then...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform other customizations</td>
<td>Choose the option you want from the ETA Main Menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement your customizations</td>
<td>Refresh the IMSID options in the IMS control region. See “Refreshing IMSID Options, TSS Tables, and CPU IDs” on page 172 for instructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Batch Features and ETA Macros

This appendix describes the batch jobs and commands that are available with EXTENDED TERMINAL ASSIST PLUS (ETA), and provides information on macros that you can use to create the following types of exits:

- ETA Translation Assist exits
- Exits that read data from user-defined TSS tables
- ETA exits that customize IMS systems

You can use these features and macros independently of the ETA online interface.

Batch Generation of the Command Processing Table Report

The Enhanced Command Security feature allows you to generate a report that is based on the information in the default Command Processing table or in a user-defined Command Processing table.

The report lists the commands, keywords, and access profiles for the specified Command Processing table. You can view the JCL that executes this program in ETACNTL member ETA#CSR1.

The REPORT statement specifies the name of the Command Processing table for which you are generating the report. The following figure shows the REPORT statement syntax.

Figure 157: REPORT Statement Syntax
**Batch Refresh of ETA Data**

ETA contains two batch programs that allow you to perform the following functions in batch rather than through the ETA ISPF interface:

- Refresh BMC CPU passwords
- Refresh TSS buffers
- Refresh IMSID options
- Refresh signon messages
- Refresh user messages
- Refresh system ALOT
- Refresh system ASOT
- Refresh system DLQT
- Refresh RACF information

Review ETACNTL library members ETA#REF1 (BMCXLINK not required) and ETA#REF2 (BMCXLINK required) for further information.
The following figure shows the `REFRESH` statement syntax.

Figure 158: REFRESH Statement Syntax

![Diagram of REFRESH Statement Syntax]

You can use the following keywords with the `REFRESH` statement:

- **TARGET=tttt**
  
  Use the `TARGET` keyword to specify an IMSID or Group name.

- **TYPE=**
  
  Use the `TYPE` keyword with the following parameters to specify the ETA data that you want to refresh.

  **ALOT**
  
  Use the `ALOT` parameter with the `TYPE` keyword to refresh the system ALOT.

  You can specify the additional parameter of `INTERVAL=iiii` with the ALOT parameter where `iiii` is 0 or 10 through 1440.

  **ASOT**
  
  Use the `ASOT` parameter with the `TYPE` keyword to refresh the system ASOT.

  You can specify the additional parameter of `INTERVAL=iiii` with the ASOT parameter where `iiii` is 0 or 10 through 1440.

  **CPUID**
  
  Use the `CPUID` parameter with the `TYPE` keyword to refresh a BMC CPU password.
DLQT

Use the **DLQT** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to refresh the system DLQT.

You can specify the additional parameter of **INTERVAL**= with the DLQT parameter where *ddd* is 0 through 365.

OPTIONS

Use the **OPTIONS** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to refresh an ETA IMSID options module.

RACF

Use the **RACF** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to refresh RACF information.

You can specify the following additional parameters with the RACF parameter: **RTYPE=PROFILES, TABLE, ACEEDEL USERID=**\*userID\*, or **USERDIS USERID=**\*nodename\*.

SIGNMSGS

Use the **SIGNMSGS** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to refresh signon messages.

TSS

Use the **TSS** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to purge an IMS control region’s TSS buffers.

USERMSGS

Use the **USERMSGS** parameter with the **TYPE** keyword to refresh user messages.

### Batch Execution of IMS commands

ETA contains two batch programs that allow you to execute IMS commands in batch.

Review ETACNTL library members ETA#CMD1 (BMCXLINK not required) and ETA#CMD2 (BMCXLINK required) for further information.
The following figure shows the **IMSCMD** statement syntax.

**Figure 159: IMSCMD Statement Syntax**

![Diagram showing IMSCMD statement syntax]

You can use the following keywords with the **IMSCMD** statement:

**TARGET=tttt**

Use the **TARGET** keyword to specify an IMSID or Group name.

*Note* The **TARGET** keyword *must* precede the **CMD** keyword.

**CMD**

Use the **CMD** keyword to specify any IMS command acceptable to AOI.

- **IMSPLEX=** specifies the implex name.
  
  *Note* The **IMSPLEX** keyword *must* precede the **CMD** keyword.

- **ROUTE=** specifies the implex member name.
  
  *Note* The **ROUTE** keyword *must* precede the **CMD** keyword.

- **WAIT TIME=nn** causes a wait time to occur where *nn* is the interval in 10ths of a second. For example, **WAIT TIME=50** causes a wait of 5 seconds.
  
  *Note* **IMSPLEX** and **TARGET** are mutually inclusive keywords.

**Batch Execution of DUMP command**

ETA contains two batch programs that allow you to dump IMS Control Region storage in batch.

Review ETACNTL library members ETA#DMP1 (BMCXLINK not required) and ETA#DMP2 (BMCXLINK required) for further information.
The TARGET and LEN keywords must occur before the DATA keyword.

The following figure shows the DUMP statement syntax.

**Figure 160: DUMP Statement Syntax**

```
DUMP - TARGET=tttt,LEN=nnnn,DATA=dddd
```

You can use the following keywords with the DUMP statement:

**TARGET=tttt**

Use the TARGET keyword to specify an IMSID or Group name.

The TARGET keyword must occur before the LEN and DATA keywords.

**LEN**

Use the LEN keyword to specify a length from 1 through 9999.

The LEN keyword must occur before the DATA keyword.

**DATA**

Use the DATA keyword to specify one of the control blocks or addresses described in “Dump Formats” on page 293.

---

**Batch TSS Commands and Features**

There are two types of TSS commands and one type of TSS statement:

- TSS data set commands apply to the TSS data set and affect all tables in the data set.

- TSS table commands apply to a specific TSS table or, in some instances, to a group of tables.

- TSS table data entry statements affect only a specific argument and result pair or, in some instances, a group of argument/result pairs.

The following table lists the TSS commands and statements and briefly describes their actions. You can issue all TSS commands from the ETA ISPF interface panels, from the TSO READY prompt, or in a batch job stream. These TSS commands are executed as subcommands of the single TSO command processor load module named ETATSS.
Table 12: TSS Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFINE</td>
<td>Define a TSS table and its characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END</td>
<td>Terminate a TSS session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORMAT</td>
<td>Format a TSS data set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>Display a TSS table and its contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOAD</td>
<td>Load a TSS table from a physical sequential data set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>READ</td>
<td>Read a data set that contains TSS commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOVE</td>
<td>Delete a TSS table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLACE</td>
<td>Update a TSS table or change any of the following: TSS table Title, Free Space Percent, masking/no masking option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLOAD</td>
<td>Unload a TSS table to a physical sequential data set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table lists the TSS statements and briefly describes their actions. You can issue all TSS statements from the ETA ISPF interface panels, from the TSO READY prompt, or in a batch job stream. These TSS statements are executed as subcommands of the single TSO command processor load module named ETATSS.

Table 13: TSS Statements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADD</td>
<td>Create new TSS table entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL</td>
<td>Call a user-written TSS program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>Delete TSS table argument/result pairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RENAME</td>
<td>Change table argument values without changing (or rekeying) the result values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVISE</td>
<td>Change existing TSS table entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET</td>
<td>Establish a QUOTES or NOQUOTES mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>Translate an argument</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TSS Data Set Update Considerations

You can use any of the following macros or parameters to establish shared access to a TSS data set:

- MVS macros ENQ and DEQ
OLD or SHR parameters of the ETATSS TSO command

OLD or SHR parameters of the ETATSS JCL command statement

If you attempt to access an existing data set, the disposition of a TSS data set depends entirely upon the disposition that was assigned to the data set when it was allocated. When you allocate a TSS data set, the default disposition is SHR.

If you attempt to update an existing TSS data set, the OLD and SHR keywords on the ETATSS command or command statement and the Disposition field on the TSS panels of the ETA online interface are ignored because the data set has been allocated and a disposition has been specified.

If you allocate a TSS data set with a disposition of OLD, MVS assigns the data set exclusively to one user. In this case, updates from this one user are always allowed and TSS does not perform special enqueues. The update mode keywords EXCL, SHAR, and NONE are ignored.

If you use a disposition of SHR, TSS responds to the update mode keywords EXCL, SHAR, and NONE. To protect the data set from simultaneous updates by other users, TSS issues a systems-level enqueue on the data set.

TSS Enqueues

TSS uses a long-term or a short-term enqueue as necessary:

- The long-term enqueue allows several users to update the TSS data set in shared mode, or allows one user to update the data set exclusively.

- TSS issues the short-term enqueue to prevent possible concurrent updates during logical operations such as TSS ADD, DEFINE, LOAD, or UNLOAD. The short-term enqueue is released when the logical operation is completed and should only be held for a fraction of a second each time.

The update mode keywords EXCL, SHAR, and NONE on the ETATSS command or command statement determine how the enqueues are used. SHAR is the default.

- SHAR allows multiple users to update the data set concurrently. TSS obtains a shared long-term enqueue when SHAR is used, and exclusive short-term enqueues are obtained as needed.

- EXCL permits one user to update the data set exclusively. Other users may use update mode NONE, but they may not use SHAR or EXCL. TSS obtains an exclusive long-term enqueue when EXCL is used. No short-term enqueues are obtained.
- **NONE** does not permit updates. TSS tables can be examined but not changed. No enqueues are obtained.

## ETATSS TSO Command Processor

Use the ETATSS TSO command processor to begin a TSS session and process TSS commands. Once the ETATSS TSO command processor is active, the TSS command processor responds with the TSS prompt. All commands that you issue at this prompt are treated as TSS commands until you issue an **END** command. You can activate the ETATSS TSO command processor from the TSO READY prompt or in a batch job stream.

The following figure shows the ETATSS TSO command processor syntax.

**Figure 161: ETATSS TSO Command Processor Syntax**

You can use the following keywords with the **ETATSS** TSO command:

**VOLUME**

Use the **VOLUME** keyword if the TSS data set is not cataloged.

**DD**

Use the **DD** keyword if a DD statement identifies the TSS data set.

**OLD**

Use the **OLD** keyword to have exclusive access to the TSS data set.

**SHR**

Use the **SHR** keyword to have shared access to the TSS data set (default). When access to a TSS data set is shared, you can use the following parameters to limit access.
SHAR

Use the SHAR parameter with the SHR keyword to allow shared update (default).

EXCL

Use the EXCL parameter with the SHR keyword to allow only exclusive update.

NONE

Use the NONE parameter with the SHR keyword to not allow updates.

See “TSS Enqueue” on page 418 for information about the use of these parameters.

TSS Data Set Level Commands

The TSS data set level statements are as follows:

- FORMAT
- READ
- END

FORMAT

The FORMAT statement initializes a TSS data set so that you can make table definitions and table entries. The command requires a TSS data set disposition of OLD. Formatting a TSS data set erases all TSS tables that are present in the data set.

The following figure shows the FORMAT statement syntax.

Figure 162: TSS Data Set Level FORMAT Statement Syntax
The **READ** statement specifies the ddname of a data set (either physical sequential or a PDS library member) that contains TSS commands. When you specify **READ** and the ddname to TSS, all of the commands in the READ data set are presented to TSS, just as if they were entered from a TSS READY prompt. The **READ** command format is shown below.

Use the **ALLOCATE** command from the TSO READY prompt to assign the ddname, or include a DD card for the DSN to be read for a batch job.

The following figure shows the **READ** statement syntax.

**Figure 163: TSS Data Set Level READ Statement Syntax**

```plaintext
READ ddname
```

The **END** statement terminates a TSS session.

The following figure shows the **END** statement syntax.

**Figure 164: TSS Data Set Level END Statement Syntax**

```plaintext
END
```

**TSS Table Level Commands**

The TSS table-level commands are as follows:

- **DEFINE**
- **REPLACE**
- **REMOVE**
- **LIST**
- **UNLOAD**
- **LOAD**
**DEFINE**

The DEFINE command defines a table and its characteristics to TSS. DEFINE writes a table definition record to the TSS table control record and initializes the first index and table records for the table. You must specify an argument length and a result length.

The following figure shows the DEFINE command syntax.

**Figure 165: TSS Table Level DEFINE Command Syntax**

You can use the following keywords with the DEFINE command:

**LENGTH**

Use the LENGTH keyword to specify the length of the argument and result pair.

**TITLE**

Use the TITLE keyword to specify a title or description for the table that is being defined. This title or description is displayed on the TSS Table Select panel and similar panels. The format for this keyword is a character string that is enclosed in quotes, with a maximum length of 32 characters.

**FRSPC**

Use the FRSPC keyword to specify the percentage of free space (0-99) to be left in each table block during a LOAD operation for future additions to the table.

**EXIT**

Use the EXIT keyword to specify the load module name of the Translation Assist exit that is used by this table. See “Translate Assist Exits” on page 432 for additional information.

**TYPE**

Use the TYPE keyword to specify the TSS table type. Valid type values are as follows:
- LOGONNOD
- LOGONTYP
- LOGOFF
- DFS3649A
- DFS3650I
- UNSOLOUT
- SIGNON
- SIGOFF
- AUTOSIGN
- RCNT
- COMMANDS
- TRANSACT
- NONDISC
- UNKNOWN

UNKNOWN is the default value.

**SPEED**

Use the SPEED keyword to specify that pattern masking will *not* be allowed during searches of the TSS table. This keyword causes TSS to use the high-speed search algorithm, which results in faster searches of the TSS table. SPEED is the default keyword for the DEFINE command.

**NOSPEED**

Use the NOSPEED keyword to specify that pattern masking will be allowed during searches of the TSS table. This keyword causes TSS to treat asterisks (*) as wildcard characters, which results in more flexible (but slower) table searches.

**REPLACE**

The REPLACE command changes the table definition parameters.
Use this command to update the table title, free space percentage, Translation Assist exit load module name, table type, or SPEED/NOSPEED options. You cannot reset the argument length and result length. Unspecified keywords do not cause corresponding changes to a table’s definition.

The following figure shows the REPLACE command syntax.

![Figure 166: TSS Table Level REPLACE Command Syntax](image)

You can use the following keywords with the REPLACE command:

**TITLE**

Use the **TITLE** keyword to specify a title or description for the table that is being defined. This title or description is displayed on the TSS Table Select panel and similar panels. The format for this keyword is a character string that is enclosed in quotes, with a maximum length of 32 characters.

**FRSPC**

Use the **FRSPC** keyword to specify the percentage of free space (0-99) to be left in each table block during a LOAD operation for future additions to the table.

**EXIT**

Use the **EXIT** keyword to specify the load module name of the Translation Assist exit that is used by this table. See “Translate Assist Exits” on page 432 for additional information.

**TYPE**

Use the **TYPE** keyword to specify the TSS table type. Valid type values are as follows:

- LOGONMOD
- LOGONTYP
- LOGOFF
- DFS3649A
- DFS3650I
- UNSOLOUT
- SIGNON
- SIGNOFF
- AUTOSIGN
- RCNT
- COMMANDS
- TRANSACT
- NONDISC
- UNKNOWN

SPEED

Use the SPEED keyword to specify that pattern masking will not be allowed during searches of the TSS table. This keyword causes TSS to use the high-speed search algorithm, which results in faster searches of the TSS table. SPEED is the default keyword for the DEFINE command.

NOSPEED

Use the NOSPEED keyword to specify that pattern masking will be allowed during searches of the TSS table. This keyword causes TSS to treat asterisks (*) as wildcard characters, which results in more flexible (but slower) table searches.

REMOVE

The REMOVE command deletes a TSS table and all of its entries. Once you remove a TSS table, its space is not freed but remains as dead space until you reorganize the TSS data set.

See Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While Not in Use on page 179 or Reorganizing a TSS Data Set While in Use on page 181 for information about online reorganization.

The following figure shows the REMOVE command syntax.

Figure 167: TSS Table Level REMOVE Command Syntax

![REMOVE tablename]

LIST

The LIST command displays information about the tables that are contained in a TSS data set and their contents.
**LIST** `tablenamepattern` displays the table name, table title, table type, argument length, result length, free space percentage, **SPEED/NOSPEED** options, and any translate assist exit name. You can use the **ARGUMENT**, **FUNCTION**, and **RANGE** keywords to limit the scope of the argument and result display.

The following figure shows the **LIST** command syntax.

![Figure 168: TSS Table Level LIST Command Syntax](image)

You can use the following keywords with the **LIST** command:

**ARGUMENT**

Use the **ARGUMENT** keyword to display TSS table entries that contain an argument or argument pattern (containing wildcard characters).

**FUNCTION**

Use the **FUNCTION** keyword to display TSS table entries that contain a result or result pattern (containing wildcard characters). When used with the **ARGUMENT** keyword, **FUNCTION** limits the display to arguments and results that match your specifications for both the argument and the result.

**RANGE**

Use the **RANGE** keyword to display TSS table entries that contain a range of arguments that you specify. You can use wildcard characters when you specify the argument range.

When used with the **ARGUMENT** or **FUNCTION** keywords, **RANGE** limits the display to arguments or results that match your specifications within the range of arguments that you specify.

**ALL**

Use the **ALL** keyword to display all entries in the table.

**UNLOAD**

The **UNLOAD** command creates a transportable copy of a TSS table or group of TSS tables. You can specify a group of TSS tables using a wildcard character to create a table name pattern, which unloads all tables that match the pattern.
If you omit the table name, then all tables are unloaded.

If you specify UNLOAD, the output data set must be pre-allocated. If it is not, message BMC1864 "ALLOCATION FAILED" is issued.

The following figure shows the UNLOAD command syntax.

**Figure 169: TSS Table Level UNLOAD Command Syntax**

You can use the following keywords to limit the UNLOAD command:

**ODD**

Use the ODD keyword to specify an output data set that is identified by a DD statement.

**TABLE**

Use the TABLE keyword to specify the TSS table that you want to unload.

**ARGUMENT**

Use the ARGUMENT keyword to unload only table entries that match a specific argument or argument pattern.

**LOAD**

The LOAD command loads a copy, created with the UNLOAD command, of a TSS table or a group of TSS tables. You specify a group of TSS tables using a wildcard character to create a table name pattern, which loads all tables that match the pattern.

**Note**

To reload a TSS table that was previously unloaded from a TSS data set and use the same TSS table name, you must delete the TSS table after you perform the unload.
The following figure shows the LOAD command syntax.

**Figure 170: TSS Table Level LOAD Command Syntax**

```
LOAD  inputsname
IDD(ddname)

TABLE(nameptrn)  TABLE(name)  RENAME(name)  ARGUMENT(pattern)  RANGE(argptrn, argptrn)
```

You can use the following keywords to limit the LOAD command:

**IDD**

Use the IDD keyword to specify the name of the DD statement that identifies the input TSS data set.

**TABLE**

Use the TABLE keyword to specify the TSS table that you want to load. You can specify a TSS table name pattern that uses wildcard characters to load multiple tables at once.

**RENAME**

Use the RENAME keyword to specify a new name for a single TSS table that you specified with the TABLE keyword.

**ARGUMENT**

Use the ARGUMENT keyword to load only table entries that match a specific argument or argument pattern.

**RANGE**

Use the RANGE keyword to load only table entries that are within a range of arguments that you supply.

---

**TSS Table Data Entry Statements**

The TSS table data entry statements are as follows:

- ADD
- CALL
- DELETE
TSS Table Data Entry Statements

- RENAME
- REVISE
- SET
- TR

ADD

The ADD statement creates a new argument and result pair for a specific TSS table. You can specify wildcard characters only if the table was defined with the NOSPEED option.

See “DEFINE” on page 422 for more information about the SPEED/NOSPEED option.

New entries are added to a table in alphanumeric sequence, according to the argument. If an ADD causes a record split, a new entry will be added to the table index record.

The following figure shows the ADD statement syntax.

Figure 171: TSS Table Data Entry ADD Statement Syntax

CALL

The CALL command allows you to call a user-written program which can then make calls to the Translate Subsystem in a batch environment. Parameters may also be passed to the program on the CALL command. The user program defines the format of these parameters. A sample user program which performs a single TSS table lookup is provided in ETASAMP(ETMTSAM2). JCL to assemble and link the program is provided in ETACNTL(ETA#SAMP).

The following figure shows the CALL statement syntax.

Figure 172: TSS Table Data Entry CALL Statement Syntax

Appendix B  Batch Features and ETA Macros 429
DELETE

The **DELETE** command removes one or more existing rows from a TSS table. To assist in deleting a single row whose argument contains wild characters, the argument pattern selects multiple rows *only* when you specify the **ALL** parameter. You can specify a result pattern to further limit the number of rows that are deleted. The table name and the argument pattern are required parameters.

The following figure shows the **DELETE** statement syntax.

**Figure 173: TSS Table Data Entry DELETE Statement Syntax**

```
DELETE    tablename    argumentptrn       resultptrn    ALL
```

RENAME

The **RENAME** command replaces the arguments in one or more existing rows in a TSS table without changing their result values. To assist in replacing the argument in a single row that contains wild characters, the old argument pattern selects multiple rows *only* when you specify the **ALL** parameter. To retain parts of an old argument in a new argument, you can specify asterisks (*) in the new argument pattern.

The following figure shows the **RENAME** statement syntax.

**Figure 174: TSS Table Data Entry RENAME Statement Syntax**

```
RENAME    tablename

oldargumentptrn    newargumentptrn    ALL
```

REVISE

The **REVISE** command replaces the result values in one or more existing rows in a TSS table without changing their arguments. To assist in selecting a single row that contains wild characters, the argument pattern selects multiple rows *only* when you specify the **ALL** parameter.
The following figure shows the REVISE statement syntax.

**Figure 175: TSS Table Data Entry REVISE Statement Syntax**

```
REVISE  tablename
argumentptrn  newresult
```

**SET**

The SET statement establishes QUOTES or NOQUOTES mode for TSS. In QUOTES mode, you must enter all TSS argument and result specifications, regardless of the command, within quotation marks to allow embedded blanks to be included within argument and result values. Quotes are never used in NOQUOTES mode, and embedded blanks are not recognized for argument or result values in TSS statements.

The following figure shows the SET statement syntax.

**Figure 176: TSS Table Data Entry SET Statement Syntax**

```
SET  NOQUOTES
     QUOTES
```

**TR**

The TR (translate) statement queries a TSS table. When an argument or argument pattern is presented with the TR statement, the corresponding result or an error message is displayed.

If the table has the SPEED option, asterisks (*) in the argument pattern are not wild and must be found in the table. If the table has the NOSPEED option, asterisks in the argument-pattern are wild. In this case, only the first match in the table is returned.

Since the matching algorithm cannot be selected through command syntax, variations in table definition or content can cause different results for the same argument pattern when wild characters are used.

The following figure shows the TR statement syntax.

**Figure 177: TSS Table Data Entry TR Statement Syntax**

```
TR  tablename  argumentpattern
```
TSS Batch Processing Execution

If you run the ETATSS TSO command processor in a batch region, you can execute the TSS commands and statements from a batch job stream. See ETA#TSSB in ETACNTL for an example of a batch job that uses TSS commands and statements.

The following figure is an example of how TSS batch commands and statements can be used with the ETATSS command processor from a TSO session.

Figure 178: Sample Translate Subsystem Batch Messages

```
READY
ETATSS ETA
.TSTTEST OLD
TSS
DEFINE 3649ATYP LENGTH(8,8) TITLE('DFS3649A by term. type') TYPE(DFS3649A)
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49SLU15 DFS2002
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49SLU22 BLANKSCR
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49SLU25 BLANKSCR
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49SLU* DFS3649A
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49NTO LOGOFF
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 493286 DFS2002
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 493270* USERMSG
TSS
ADD 3649ATYP 49FIN 3649AFMT
TSS
list 3649ATYP ALL
TABLE----3649ATYP  DFS3649A BY TERM. TYPE
TYPE=DFS3649A  LENGTH(008,008)  FRSPC(00)  SPEED
ARGUMENT---(49FIN   )    RESULT---(3649AFMT)
ARGUMENT---(49NTO   )    RESULT---(LOGOFF   )
ARGUMENT---(49SLU15 )    RESULT---(DFS2002  )
ARGUMENT---(49SLU22 )    RESULT---(BLANKSCR)
ARGUMENT---(49SLU25 )    RESULT---(BLANKSCR)
ARGUMENT---(49SLU***)   RESULT---(DFS3649A)
ARGUMENT---(493270**)   RESULT---(USERMSG    )
ARGUMENT---(493286  )    RESULT---(DFS2002   )
BMCETA001938  8 ENTRIES LISTED
TSS
END
READY
```

Translate Assist Exits

Program manipulation of an argument value that produces a result value reduces table storage requirements and I/O. In this way, a Translation Assist exit routine provides the TSS user with additional flexibility in table design. When you define a TSS table with an exit load module name specified, the exit can perform any of the following functions:
■ alter the argument
■ reject the argument
■ request a table search
■ return a result that you specify instead of requesting a table search

The prologues to the Translation Assist exit sample members ETMTSAMP and ETMTSAM2 contain more information about the exit and its interface conventions.

When you have coded your exit, you must assemble and link-edit the exit into the library in the IMS control region STEPLIB that contains ETA product code, using any load module name that you choose. Member ETA#SAMP in ETACNTL contains sample JCL for the assemble and link job.

The exit does not depend on the IMS environment for operation. You can test it in the TSO environment before implementing it into your IMS control region. When you define a TSS table and use the EXIT keyword, IMS loads the exit from the STEPLIB that you specified. If you subsequently modify the exit routine, the changes will not be implemented until you use ETA to reload the exit.

When TSS uses a table that was defined with the EXIT keyword, the exit is given control before the table search. If the exit is not found, translation fails with return code 8.

**Required Positional Parameters**

The $ETMUCMD macro required positional parameters are as follows:

**FUNC**

Use the **FUNC** parameter to specify the macro function. This parameter has no default, and it must have one of the following values:

■ **TRANSLATE**
■ **LIST**
■ **HELP**

**EXIT**

Use the **EXIT** parameter to specify the IMS or ETA exit that will invoke TSS. This parameter has no default, and it must have one of the following values:

■ **SIGNON**
Required Non-Positional Parameters

The $ETMUCMD macro parameters that are required for the TRANSLATE and LIST functions are as follows:

**TAB**

Use the **TAB** parameter to specify a TSS table name. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register
- character literal (="CL8'TBLNAME'")
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD-ADDRESS (or LA) instruction

**ARG**

Use the **ARG** parameter to specify an argument in the TSS table that is specified by the **TAB** parameter. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD-ADDRESS (or LA) instruction
WA

Use the **WA** parameter to specify a work area address. This area must be at least 3072 bytes. If you are using any of the standard ETA user exit points, the work area provided should be used here. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD-ADDRESS (or LA) instruction

**Additional Required Parameters for LIST**

Additional **$ETMUCMD** macro parameters that are required for the **LIST** function are as follows:

**RTN**

Use the **RTN** parameter to specify the address of the TSS **LIST** processing routine for the TSS table that is specified by the **TAB** parameter. The routine address will be passed to the ETA exit routine, which may specify whether to use the TSS **LIST** function. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD (or L) instruction

**RTNPARM**

Use the **RTNPARM** parameter to specify the address of the exit work area. This address will be passed to the **LIST** processing routine that is specified by the **RTN** parameter. The **RTNPARM** parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD-ADDRESS (or LA) instruction

**Optional Parameters**

Optional **$ETMUCMD** macro parameters for the **TRANSLATE** and **LIST** functions are as follows:
FND

Use the FND parameter to specify a branch target that will be used if the TSS function finds the requested argument in the specified TSS table. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label to branch to

NOTFND

Use the NOTFND parameter to specify a branch target that will be used if the TSS function does not find the requested argument in the specified TSS table. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label to branch to

NOTABLE

Use the NOTABLE parameter to specify a branch target that will be used if the TSS function determines that the specified TSS table does not exist in the TSS data set that is being used. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label to be branched to

TSM

Use the TSM parameter to specify the address of the TSS TSM data area. For increased processing efficiency, BMC Software recommends that you specify the TSM address. If you do not know the address, $ETMUCMD will automatically generate the code that is required to find the TSM address. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD (or L) instruction

**Note**

This parameter is required for an EXIT value of BATCH or OTMA.
Use the **ECB** parameter to specify the address of the IMS ECB for this ITASK. For increased processing efficiency, BMC Software recommends that you specify the IMS ECB. If you do not know the address, $ETMUCMD will automatically generate code that will attempt to locate the IMS ECB address. This parameter must have one of the following values:

- valid register (register 2 through 12)
- label that will be used as the object of a LOAD (or L) instruction

### TSS Macro for Accessing TSS Table Data

The $ETMUCMD macro is an interface to the TSS **TRANSLATE** and **LIST** functions. This macro can be used in an See "DEFINE" for more information about the **SPEED/NOSPEED** option. or IMS exit to locate data in a standard or user-defined TSS table.

The following table lists the parameters and values that you can use when issuing $ETMUCMD macro calls.

**Table 14: $ETMUCMD Macro Parameters and Their Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FUNC</td>
<td>the function to perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXIT</td>
<td>the place from which the TSS call is made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAB=,</td>
<td>the TSS table name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARG=,</td>
<td>a TSS table argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WA=,</td>
<td>a TSS work area address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FND=,</td>
<td>an argument found branch address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTFND=,</td>
<td>an argument not found branch address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTABLE=,</td>
<td>a TSS table undefined address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSM=,</td>
<td>an ETA TSM address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECB=,</td>
<td>an IMS ECB address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTN=,</td>
<td>a LIST processing routine address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTNPARM=,</td>
<td>a LIST processing routine parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ETA Macros for IMS System Customization Exits

Although one of the primary purposes of ETA is to eliminate the writing and maintenance of exits, you can write exits that take advantage of options and capabilities that ETA provides. These exits can perform IMS system customizations or other functions that are unique to your facility.

ETA allows you to create the following exits:

- ETA Autosignon exit (ETAEASNn)
- ETA Logoff exit (ETAELGFn)
- ETA Logon exit (ETAELGNn)
- ETA Signoff exit (ETAESGFn)
- ETA Signon exit (ETAESGNn)
- ETA Unsolicited Output exit (ETAEINSn)
- ETA Greeting Messages exit (ETAEGMEFn)
- ETA Non-Discardable Messages exit (ETAENDMn)

For example, in these ETA exit names, the n at the end of the default exit name is replaced by 5 under IMS Version 13.1 or 6 under IMS Version 14.1.

ETASAMP contains the source and macros that you will need to create these exits. ETACNTL contains the JCL that you will need to assemble the source with the IMS release-dependent stubs.

If you assemble any ETA exit with no modifications, when activated, it will read the options that you specified for that type of processing in the ETA IMSID options panels and use the options that you specified. This includes TSS table searches and all processing options that you specified for successful and unsuccessful TSS table searches.

For example, if you assembled and activated an ETA exit with no modifications, you could expect the following results:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the applicable IMSID options are...</th>
<th>Then the ETA exit would...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deactivated or not specified</td>
<td>Use IMS defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specified through ETA basic features</td>
<td>Perform the customizations specified in the ETA IMSID options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If the applicable IMSID options are... | Then the ETA exit would...
---|---
Specified through a TSS table | Search the TSS table and perform the action or customizations specified in the TSS processing options.

If you modify an ETA exit, the exit will function as you coded it. If the exit fails to produce usable output or is deactivated, the options that are specified in the ETA IMSID options will be used.

See “Creating and Assembling ETA Exits” on page 439 for instructions.

Creating and Assembling ETA Exits

You can create an ETA exit that takes advantage of ETA’s capabilities. Once you have created the exit, you must use JCL that is provided with ETA to assemble and link the exit and the appropriate IMS release-dependent ETA code.

Before you begin

You must know the location of ETASAMP and ETACNTL. Contact your ETA system administrator.

If you want the ETA exit to make use of customization information that is specified in the ETA IMSID options or in a TSS table, you must use the ETA online interface to specify these options or create the TSS table. See “IMS Customization by IMSID” on page 53 for instructions on specifying customization through the ETA online interface. See “Utilities for Translate Subsystem Services Feature” on page 175 for instructions on creating TSS tables.

To Create and Assemble ETA Exits

1. Create an ETA exit by modifying statements, as necessary, in one of the following macros:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to create an ETA exit that controls...</th>
<th>Then modify sample exit...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logon options</td>
<td>ETMELN1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logoff options</td>
<td>ETMELF1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signon options</td>
<td>ETMESN1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signoff options</td>
<td>ETMESF1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosignon options</td>
<td>ETMEAS1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsolicited output options</td>
<td>ETMEIN1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFS3649A, DFS3650I, or DFS2467I options</td>
<td>ETMEGM1X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you want to create an ETA exit that controls... | Then modify sample exit...
---|---
Non-discardable messages options | ETMEND1X

2 Modify the appropriate JCL in ETACNTL as necessary. You must specify the IMS release-dependent stub that will be assembled with the macro.

**Note**
Change only the required parameters that are listed in the JCL. Changing the JCL name and other parameters may cause the assembly to fail.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you want to create an ETA exit that controls...</th>
<th>Then modify JCL in...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logon options</td>
<td>ETA#ELN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logoff options</td>
<td>ETA#ELF1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signon options</td>
<td>ETA#ESN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signoff options</td>
<td>ETA#ESF1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosignon options</td>
<td>ETA#EAS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsolicited output options</td>
<td>ETA#EIN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFS3649A, DFS3650I, or DFS2467I options</td>
<td>ETA#EGE1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-discardable messages options</td>
<td>ETA#END1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Use the JCL to assemble and link the ETA exit that you created.

4 Repeat this task for other ETA exits as needed.

5 Repeat this task for other IMS systems as needed.

**Where to go from here**

You must perform the following actions:

- Use the ETA Exit Processing panel to activate the exit. See “Deactivating and Reactivating Exits” on page 245 for instructions.

- Modify the appropriate selection option in the ETA IMSID options so that ETA will recognize the exit and use it to specify IMS system customization. See one of the following sections for information and instructions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you created exit...</th>
<th>Then see...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ETAEGMEn</td>
<td>“Replacing the DFS3649A Message—ETA Defaults” on page 122, “Replacing the DFS3650I Message—ETA Defaults” on page 133, or “Replacing the DFS2467I Message by Terminal Type” on page 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you created exit...</td>
<td>Then see...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAELGN(n)</td>
<td>“Specifying Logon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAELGFn</td>
<td>“Specifying Logoff Options—ETA Defaults” on page 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAESGN(n)</td>
<td>“Specifying Signon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAESGFn</td>
<td>“Specifying Signoff Options—ETA Defaults” on page 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAEASN(n)</td>
<td>“Specifying Autosignon Options—ETA Defaults” on page 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAEINS(n)</td>
<td>“Specifying Unsolicited Output Options—ETA Defaults” on page 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETAENDM(n)</td>
<td>“Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—ETA Defaults” on page 164 and “Specifying Non-discardable Message Options—TSS Options” on page 167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/DEQUEUE

An IMS command that deletes messages queued to an LTERM.

(EXIT)

An IMS command that stops conversational processing between a USER and one or more transactions.

A

administrator authority

The authorization an ETA user must have in order to create, modify, and delete user access profiles.

ALOT

Autologoff interval. A user-specified interval that determines when inactive terminals and printers will be automatically logged off IMS.

AOI

Automated Operator Interface. An IMS interface that automates the interaction with various system processes.

ASOT
Autosignoff interval. A user-specified interval that determines when inactive terminals and printers will be automatically signed off IMS.

**Autosignon**

A product feature that allows terminals and printers to bypass the ETO requirement that all devices sign on to IMS.

**B**

**BMCXLINK**

An interregion control facility provided with ETA that allows the ETA user to communicate with an IMS control region.

**C**

**CSECT**

Control section. The part of a program specified by the programmer to be a relocatable unit, all elements of which are to be loaded into adjoining main storage locations.

**D**

**DBRC**

Data Base Recovery Control. An IMS feature that maintains information needed for database recovery.

descriptor

An IMS PROCLIB member that provides information required for the creation of ETO dynamic terminals and LTERMs. There are four types of descriptor: LOGON, USER, MFS device, and MSC.

descriptor list

Information created and stored through ETA that allows for the dynamic addition or deletion of descriptors on an IMS system.
DL/I

Data Language/I. A language that provides an interface between user applications and IMS.

DSECT

Dummy Control Section. A control section that an assembler can use to format an area of storage without producing any object code.

dynamic LTERM

Any LTERM in your IMS network not defined to IMS in the IMSGEN but rather defined to IMS by IBM’s ETO feature. If an LTERM assigned to a dynamic terminal is not found among IMSGEN-defined LTERMs or existing dynamic LTERMs, ETO creates a new dynamic LTERM with the name it requires. See also LTERM.

dynamic printer

Any printer not defined in an IMSGEN but rather defined to IMS by IBM’s ETO feature. In IMS systems that run ETA, dynamic terminal node names and LTERM names can be contained in a TSS table. The table allows possible dynamic printer LTERM names to be validated and, when needed, translated into the dynamic printer node names. See also terminal.

dynamic terminal

Any terminal not defined in an IMSGEN but rather created at logon time by IBM’s ETO feature and deleted after the user logs off IMS. Dynamic terminal control blocks reside in the IMS control region only while that dynamic terminal is logged on to IMS. Dynamic terminal control blocks are deleted when dynamic terminals are logged off, thereby freeing virtual storage for another dynamic terminal user. See also terminal.

E

ETO

Extended Terminal Option. A feature available with IMS Version 4.1 and later that allows terminals, printers, and LTERMs to be created dynamically instead of being defined in an IMSGEN.
IMS

Information Management System. IBM’s system for managing large volumes of data and transactions.

job

One or more programs executed synchronously under control of the operating system (OS/VS) and Job Entry Subsystem (JES).

LTERM

Logical Terminal. A destination with a name related to one or more physical terminals.

MSC

Multiple Systems Coupling. An IMS feature that permits geographically dispersed IMS systems to communicate with each other.

MSNAME

Information required for Multiple Systems Coupling (MSC). The MSNAME indicates that an LTERM entry is to be defined as a remote LTERM specifying the link name of the desired logical system.

MTO

Master Terminal Operator. The person using the logical terminal that controls all IMS resources and online operations.
N
node

A point in a VTAM network where a terminal or printer can be connected.

R
RCNT

Remote communications name table. A table containing the names of terminals in an MSC-connected system where transactions may originate. See also remote LTERM.

remote LTERM

An LTERM on an MSC-connected IMS system where a transaction originated.

RESLIB

The IMS library data set that contains the authorized load modules for the IMS system.

S
SPQB

Subpool Queue Block. A control block that links virtual LTERMs to virtual nodes under IMS. This control block is also known as the USER control block.

T
terminal

A hardware device attached to the computer and supported by IMS/TM. Applicable hardware devices are display units and printers. A terminal usually has one or more logical terminals (LTERMs) associated with it.
TSS

Translate Subsystem Services. An ETA generalized table lookup feature that allows you to create and use tables of data to specify IMS customization options.

U

unknown destination

A destination to which output has been queued, but which does not exist on the IMS system because the LTERM was not IMSGEN-defined or has not been dynamically created. The ETA Unsolicited Output feature allows you to control the creation of unknown destinations.

Unsolicited Output feature

An ETA feature that allows you to specify whether unknown destinations should be created on an IMS system. This feature can also be used to specify options for unknown destinations (if you allow them to be created) and for dynamic printer LTERMs and the associated SPQB and VCNT control block structures.

UPDS

User Profile Data Set. A partitioned data set used to store the ETA user access profiles. The user access profiles are used to control access to ETA functions.

USER

In ETA documentation, this term is used to denote the IMS user element.

user access profile

Information used by ETA’s internal security feature. User access profiles specify the ETA features that a user (specified by user ID) can use on a specified IMS system.

user ID

A string of characters that uniquely identifies a user to an IMS system.
Index

/DEQ messages from previous session(s) option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
/DEQ messages option
  Logoff options
    Static terminals 80
  Signoff options
    Dynamic terminals 115
/DEQUEUE
  definition 443
(EXIT
  definition 443
(EXIT all conversations option
  Signoff options
    Dynamic terminals 115
    Static terminals 115
  Logoff options
    Dynamic STSN devices 80
    Static terminals 80
(EXIT conversations from previous session(s)
  option
    Autosignon options 88
    Signon options 101
(EXIT held conversations when inactive interval
  timer driven options 159
(EXIT non-held conversations when inactive interval
  timer driven options 159

3600 (FINANCE) terminals, logon data for
  before you begin 63, 71
  activating feature that provides 63
  before you begin 63, 71

A

access profiles

refresh 321, 322
access profiles, command security
  creating for Enhanced Command Security 299
  refreshing 299
Accessor Environment Element. See ACEE
ACEE
  creating 149
  refresh 322
action bar, selections 31
adding descriptors through a descriptor list 237
administrator authority
  definition 291, 443
ALLOC keyword for CHANGE command 255
allocating/formatting a TSS data set online 176
Allow ETA logon to process static devices option
  Logon options 63
Allow multiple signons per userid option
  Autosignon options 92
  Signon options 106
ALOT
  definition 443
  Logon options 63, 71
  message notification at expiration 144
  override hierarchy 141
  refresh options 325
  timeout options 144
  See also logoff at autosignoff
Alternate ALOT=0 processing
  IMS initialization options 169
alternate IMSID
  instructions for specifying 44
AOI
  definition 443
argument length for TSS tables 191
Argument Propagation feature, TSS 190
argument values, replacing in batch 430
ASOT
Autosignon options 88
definition 443
Logon options 63, 71
message notification at expiration 144
override hierarchy 141
refresh options 325
Signon options 101
timeout options 144
See also LOGONNOD, LOGONTYP,
AUTOSIGN, or SIGNON TSS table
assembling ETA user exits 439
ASSIGN command 251, 252
EUO parameter 251
ID keyword 252
LOGOND keyword 252
MODETBL keyword 252
ASSIGN enhancements 251
Assume ALLROWS keyword on /DIS TSSTABLE
command
instructions for specifying 49
Autologoff
 Logon options 71
timeout options 144
Autologoff notification
timeout options
  Send message to IMS Master Terminal 144
  Send message to the OS Console 144
Automatic /DEQ DEADQ users at checkpoint
timer driven options 159
AUTOSIGN TSS table
activating 88
attributes and available options 195
Autosignoff
Autosignon options 88
Logon options 71
Signon options 101
timeout options 144
Autosignoff notification
timeout options
  Send message to IMS Master Terminal 144
  Send message to the OS Console 144
Autosignon
 definition 444
AUTOSIGNON descriptor
 specifying
See also TSS table
AUTOSIGNON descriptor, specifying 88, 101
Autosignon exit
/DEQ messages from previous session(s) option 88
(EXIT conversations from previous session(s) option 88
Allow multiple signons per userid option 92
ASOT 88
Autosignoff 88
Autosignon security options 88
Bypass RACF authorization for conversations option 88
Deactivate response mode from previous session option 88
definition of Autosignon 85
Descriptor selection order 88
IMS response mode option 88
Include static terminal sessions in calculation option 92
instructions for specifying 88
Logoff at Autosignoff 88
LTERM Output option 88
LTERM/USER option 92
Maximum sessions per userid option 92
Message delete option 88
Method option 88
Node name TSS table name 97
Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff option 88
sample configurations 371
Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERM(s) option 88
Suffix length option 92
Suffix list option 92
Suffixing type option 92
Suppress autosignon failure messages option 88
terminal types that use 88
TSS argument option 97
TSS table, specifying options through activation 97
attributes and available options 195
table processing option 97
Use RACF userid for autosignon option
SLU-2 devices 88
SLU-P devices 88
3270 devices 88
Finance devices 88
SLU-1 devices 88
Userid TSS table name 97
See also configurations
Autosignon security options 88

B
background on TSS data sets 175
backing up a TSS data set 187
batch
  generating Command Security Table report 411
  batch processing 419, 420
  TSS
    ADD 429
    DEFINE 422
    DELETE 430
    END 421
    ETATSS TSO command processor 419
    FORMAT 420
    LIST 425
    LOAD 427
    READ 421
    REMOVE 425
    RENAME 430
    REPLACE 423
    REVISE 430
    SET 431
    TRANSLATE 431
    UNLOAD 427
BMCXLINK
  definition 444
diagnostics 331
  HELP command 303
  start 303
  starting and stopping 302
  terminate 303
  Trace facility 302
browsing a TSS table 211
bypass IMS password reverification for STSN devices
  IMS initialization options 169
Bypass RACF authorization for conversations option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
Bypass signon security for messages option
  Signon options 101

C
cache buffers for TSS
  definition 189
  CHANGE command
commands
- ASSIGN enhancements 252
  - ID keyword 252
  - LOGOND keyword 252
  - MODETBL keyword 252
- batch IMS processing 414, 415
- batch TSS processing 416
- CHANGE enhancements
  - overview 255
  - syntax 255
- DISPLAY enhancements 258
  - DESCRIPTOR keyword 260
  - ETA keyword 264
- ETA panel for issuing
  - background 322
  - instructions for use 324
- ETATSS 419
- generic parameters 251
- MESSAGE primary command 33
- SECURE enhancements 286
  - ALLOW keywords and parameters 287
  - CLEAR keywords and parameters 288
  - DISABLE keywords and parameters 289
  - ENABLE keywords and parameters 290
- See also batch processing
  - COMMANDS table
    - activating 157
  - commands TSS processing. See batch processing
  - COMMANDS TSS table
    - activating 157
  - compressing a TSS data set. See reorganizing a TSS data set
  - compressing a TSS data set. See reorganizing a TSS data set 181
  - concurrent logons, establishing maximum limit 63, 71
  - configurations sample
    - signon configurations 378
  - configurations, sample
    - Autosignon Configurations 371
    - DFS3649A TSS table 392
    - DFS3649A/DFS3650I Configurations 385
    - IMS System Configurations 336
    - Logon Configurations 363
    - Logon TSS table 391
    - System Configuration form 336
    - Unsolicited Output TSS table 390
    - worksheet for designing configurations 336
confirmation panels
   Cancel 36
   Delete 36
   Refresh 36
   Save 36

console, notification at autologoff/autosignoff 144

conventions, documentation 14

copying a TSS table 223

CPU ID
   refresh 322, 325
   CPU ID information
      refreshing options
         batch 412

creating a TSS table
   batch 422
   online 206

creating descriptor lists 229

CSECT
   definition 444

customization
   Group options, specifying 47
   IMSID options - TSS information, specifying 49
   IMSID options, specifying 44

d

DBRC
   definition 444

Deactivate response mode from previous session option
   Autosignon options 88
   Signon options 101

deaactivating exits 245

Dead Letter Queue interval
   description and overview 322
   specifying or refreshing 325

Default processing option
   non-discardable message options 165

defining a TSS table
   batch 422
   online 206

Delete confirmation 36

deleting (removing) a TSS table
   batch 425
   online 216

deleting descriptors 240

descriptor
   definition 444

descriptor list
   definition 444

descriptor lists
   checking syntax 234
   creating 229
   definition 227
   editing 232
   executing 237

descriptor selection algorithm
   Autosignon 88, 101
   Autosignon options 88
   logon 63, 71
   See also TSS table 88
   Signon options 101
   See also TSS table

Descriptor selection order
   Autosignon options 88
   Logon options 71
   Signon options 101

descriptor utilities
   executing descriptor lists 237
   checking descriptor lists 234
   creating descriptor lists 229
   deleting descriptors 240
   editing descriptor lists 232
   overview 227
   reloading entire Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0) 241

descriptors
   deleting 240

Device Descriptor table (DFSUDT0x)
   reloading 241

device descriptors, adding and deleting 227

DFS059 messages, discarding
   Autosignon options 88
   Signon options 101
   Unsolicited Output options 55, 58

DFS2002 message
   replacing the DFS3649A message 122
   replacing the DFS3650I message 133

DFS2467I Message options
   background 161
   by terminal type 162
   DFS2467I Message Selection option 162
   IMSID options 161
   Include error message text 162
   Include error return code 162
   Static terminal message replacement option 162
   Static terminal user format name 162

DFS2467I Message Selection option
DFS2467I Message options 162
DFS3649A Message options 120
  activation by terminal type 122
  background 120
  by terminal type 125
DFS3649A Message Selection option 122
Dynamic terminals message replacement
  option by terminal type 125
Include error message text 122
Include error return code 122
Optional User format name 125
Static terminals message replacement option by
  terminal type 125
TSS argument search order 128
TSS table name 128
TSS table type 128
TSS table, specifying options through
  table activation 128
Use format in Signon RC message module 125
See also TSS table
DFS3649A message replacement
  activation with format from VTAM
  USERDATA 63
  sample configurations 385
  sample TSS table 392
See also configurations
DFS3649A Message Selection option
DFS3649A Message options 122
DFS3649A Message TSS table
  activating 128
DFS3649A TSS table
  activation 122
  attributes and available options 199
  sample TSS table configuration 392
See also configurations
DFS3650I Message options 131
activation by terminal type 133
background 131
by terminal type 136
DFS3650I Message Selection option 133
Dynamic terminals message replacement
  option by terminal type 136
IMSID options 131
Optional User format name 136
password message for password expiration 131
Static terminals message replacement option by
  terminal type 136
TSS argument search order 139
TSS table name 139
TSS table type 139
TSS table, specifying options through
  table activation 139
See also TSS table
DFS3650I Message options TSS table
  activation 133
DFS3650I message replacement
  activation with format from VTAM
  USERDATA 63
  sample configurations 385
See also configurations
DFS3650I Message Selection option
DFS3650I Message options 133
DFS3650I Message TSS table
  activating 139
DFS3650I TSS table
  attributes and available options 200
DFSUDT0x
  reloading 241
diagnostic features
  BMCXLINK diagnostics 331
  IMS control region documentation 329
  trace features 328
DISPLAY command 256
DESCRIPTOR keyword
  DEVICE keyword 260
  NODE keyword and parameters 261
  USER keyword and parameters 263
ETA keyword 264
  COMMAND keyword and parameters 264
  DATA keyword and parameters 276, 277
  LTERM keyword and parameters 267
  NODE keyword and parameters 269
  OPTIONS keyword 270
  STATUS keyword 274
  USER keyword and parameters 283
LOGON keyword
  ALLOWED keyword and parameters 279
  STATUS keyword and parameters 279
SIGNON keyword
  STATUS keyword and parameters 281
syntax 258
TSSTABLE keyword
  tablename parameter 283
DISPLAY enhancements 256
displaying IMS storage 310
displaying information about a TSS table
  batch 425
  online 209
DL/I
  definition 445
DLQT
  description and overview 322
  specifying or refreshing 325
Do not send DFS555I
  non-discardable message options 165
Do not USTOP transaction
  non-discardable message options 165
documentation information 13
documentation required for product support
  BMCLXINK diagnostics 331
  IMS Master terminal log 329
  IMS system log tapes 330
  IPCS 330
  MVS system log 330
DSECT
  definition 445
dynamic LTERM
  definition 445
dynamic printer
  definition 445
dynamic terminal
  definition 445
Dynamic terminals message replacement option by terminal type
  DFS3649A Message options 125
  DFS3650I Message options 136

E

editing a TSS table
  batch deletion of entries 430
  online 211
editing descriptor lists 232
Enhanced Command Security
  ACEE 149
  background 147
  Command Processing table function 301
  considerations and restrictions 150
  creating access profiles 299
  defining Command Processing table 300
  defining RACF classes 298
  generating a Command Security Table report 411
  implementing 148
  IMSID options 153
  input sources 147
  RACF 147
  RACF and ACF2 consideration 150
  refreshing access profiles 299
  requirements 297
  TSS table, specifying options through
    table activation 157
  using RACF 148
  See also Administration features
Enhanced Command Security options
  Command rejection processing 153
  Command Security TSS table name 157
  Command table suffix 153
  Method 153
  Processing environments 153
  RACF resource class name 153
  Return IMS user message 153
  Send violation messages to IMS MTO 153
  Send violation messages to OS console 153
  suffix for modified Command Processing table 153
  TSS options 152
  TSS search argument 157
  TSS table processing 157
error messages
online help for 33

ETA
features 22
overview 21
ETA Dynamic Terminal trace for IMS control regions 328
ETA user exits
Autosignon exit, activation 88
creating and assembling 439
Greetings exit for DFS2467I message, activation 162
Greetings exit for DFS3649A message, activation 122, 133
Logoff exit, activation 80
Logon exit, activation 63
macros for creating 438
Non-discardable message exit, activation 164, 165
Signoff exit, activation 113, 115
Signon exit, activation 101
Translation Assist Exit 432
Unsolicited Output exit, activation 55
ETATSS TSO command processor 419
ETAZgggg modules
instructions for creating 47
ETO
definition 445
EUO keyword 251
EUO parameter for ASSIGN command 251
Execute IMS Commands panel
background 322
instructions for use 324
executing descriptor lists
instructions 237
overview 327
executing IMS commands 324
exit utilities
checking status of exits 248
deactivating and reactivating exits 245
loading and reloading exits 247
overview 243
extended help 31, 32
field-level help 32
File Select Print Utility 330
FINANCE (3600) terminals, logon data for 63, 71
activating feature that provides 63
formatted display of TSS table data 211
formatting a TSS data set
batch 420
online 176
function keys
function assignment change 40
G
Gather statistics interval
timer driven options 159
generic parameters 251
global option
See also the installation guide
global options
background 291
greetings exit
activation of ETA exit 122, 133, 162
macro for creating 438
See also exit utilities
Group options
BMCXLINK LUNAME 47
Copy Group Options to an IMS STEPLIB
library 47
IMS STEPLIB library 47
instructions for specifying 47
Options library 42
Save library 1 42
Save library 2 42
H
help
error messages 33
options from action bar 31
product interface 32
I
IMS
definition 446
IMS commands 251
ASSIGN command 252
  ID keyword 252
  LOGOND keyword 252
  MODETBL keyword 252
CHANGE command
  ALLOC keyword 255
  INACTIVE keyword 255
  NODE keyword 255
overview 255
  syntax 255
  TSS keyword 255
  UNALLOC keyword 255
DISPLAY enhancements 256, 258
  DESCRIPTOR keyword 260
  ETA keyword 264
ETA panel for issuing 322, 324
executing 324
SECURE enhancements 286
  ALLOW keywords and parameters 287
  CLEAR keywords and parameters 288
  DISABLE keywords and parameters 289
  ENABLE keywords and parameters 290
IMS control region documentation for diagnostic support 329
IMS customization. See IMSID options 55, 58
IMS Dispatcher Trace 328
IMS initialization options
  Alternate ALOT=0 processing 169
  background 169
  bypass IMS password reverification for STSN devices 169
  IMS password reverification 169
  Resource sharing for ISC in Resource Manager 169
  VTAM Generic Resource processing 169
IMS Master terminal log 329
IMS password reverification
  IMS initialization options 169
IMS response mode option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55
IMS STEPLIB library
  automatically copy options to 44, 47
  instructions for specifying 44, 47
IMS Storage Display panel 294
IMS storage display, performing 292
dump formats 292
dump length 294
  instructions 310
IMS storage displays, allowing
  instructions 44
IMS storage zap, performing 310
IMS storage zaps, allowing
  instructions 44
IMS system configurations. See configurations
IMS system configurations, sample 336
IMS system log tapes 330
IMSID options 120
  Assume ALLROWS keyword on /DIS
  TSSTABLE command 49
  Autosignon options 88, 92
  basic IMSID information 42
  BMCXLINK LUNAME 44
  Copy IMSID Options to an IMS STEPLIB library 44
  DFS2467I Message options 161
  DFS3649A Message options 120, 122
  DFS3650I Message options 131, 133
  Enhanced Command Security 153
  IMS STEPLIB library 44
  IMS storage displays 44
  IMS storage zaps 44
  instructions for specifying 44
  logon options 71
  Logon options 63
  Number of cache buffers 49
  Options library 42
  RCNT TSS table name 49
  refreshing options 172
  batch 412
  from Refresh IMS panel 325
  Save library 1 42
  Save library 2 42
  Signon options 101, 106
  timeout options 144
  TSS information
    instructions for specifying 49
    TSS table data set name 49
  Unsolicited Output and Printer options 55, 58
  XCF Group 44
  XRF alternate IMSID 44
  INACTIVE keyword for CHANGE command 255
  Include error message text
  DFS2467I Message options 162
  DFS3649A Message options 122
  Include error return code
DFS2467I Message options 162
DFS3649A Message options 122
Include static terminal sessions in calculation option
   Autosignon options 92
   Signon options 106
initial format name from VTAM USERDATA 63
Initial format name support option
   Logon options 63
initial transaction schedule from VTAM USERDATA 63
Initial transaction scheduling support option
   Logon options 63
input sources
   Enhanced Command Security 147
insert exit. See exit
IPCS 330
ISC configurations
   implementing through ETA 403
   sample IMS VTAM APPLID 403
   through ETA Autosignon feature 404
   through ETA Unsolicited Output feature 404
ISPF
commands
   BASEMSG 312
   COPY 206
   DBC¢ 332
   MESSAGE 33
   UPGRADE 312
diagnostics 332

J
job
definition 446

L
loading a TSS table
   batch 427
   online 221
loading exits 247
logo panel
   startup 38
Logoff at Autosignoff
   Autosignon options 88
   Logon options 71
   Signon options 101
   timeout options 144
logoff at autosignoff (ASOT)
   logon option 71
   timeout option 144
Logoff at autosignoff (ASOT)
   Autosignon options 88
   Signon options 101
logoff at signoff
   override hierarchy 141
Logoff exit
   activation of ETA exit 80
Logoff options
   /* DEQ messages option
      Static terminals 80
   */EXIT all conversations option
      Dynamic STSN devices 80
      Static terminals 80
background 77
Logoff Selection option 80
LOGOFF TSS table name
   Dynamic STSN devices 83
   Static terminals 83
processing flow 77
Remove EXCLUSIVE mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
Remove MFSTEST mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
Remove PRESET mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
Remove RESPONSE mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
Remove TEST mode option
   Dynamic STSN devices 80
   Static terminals 80
TSS processing
   Dynamic STSN devices 83
   Static terminals 83
TSS table, specifying options through attributes and available options 194, 198
Logoff Selection option
   Logoff options 80
LOGOFF TSS table
   attributes and available options 194, 198
LOGOFF TSS table name
Logoff options
  Dynamic STSN devices 83
  Static terminals 83
logan
  configuration, sample 391
LOGON descriptor 71
  specifying 71
  specifying descriptor selection algorithm 71
  See also TSS table
LOGON descriptor, adding and deleting 227
LOGON descriptor, specifying 63, 71
  through ASSIGN command 252
logon exit
  macro for creating ETA exit 438
Logon exit
  activation of ETA exit 63
logon options
  TSS table, specifying options through
  attributes and available options 192
Logon options 363

Allow ETA logon to process static devices
  option 63
ALOT 71
ASOT 71
Autologoff 71
Autosignoff 71
  background 61
Descriptor selection order 71
Fail logon if maximum dynamic terminals
  exceeded option 63
Initial format name support option 63
Initial transaction scheduling support option 63
instructions for specifying 63, 71
Logoff at Autosignoff 71
Max count field 63
Method option 63
  processing flow 61
Propagate userid to IMS option 63
Provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/Finance
  devices option 63
sample configurations 391
Screen size 71
Session manager true nodename support
  option 63
Table 1 processing options 74
Table 2 processing options 74
TSS table search order 74
TSS table, specifying options through
  table activation 74
  table search order 74
  See also configurations
Logon, restricting with SECURE command 286
LOGONNOD TSS table
  activating 74
  attributes and available options 192
  search processing options 74
  table search order 74
LOGONNOD TSS table creating. See TSS table
  utilities
LOGONTYP TSS table
  activating 74
  attributes and available options 192
  configuration, sample 391
  search processing options 74
  table search order 74
LOGONTYP TSS table creating. See TSS table
  utilities
LTERM
definition 446
name same as user ID or node name
  Autosignon option 92
  Signon option 106
other naming conventions. See SIGNON or
  AUTOSIGN TSS table 92, 106
See also SIGNON, AUTOSIGN TSS tables 106
UC/ULC option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55, 58
See also SIGNON or AUTOSIGN TSS table
  See also SIGNON, AUTOSIGN TSS tables
LTERM and USER name
  Autosignon option 92
  Signon option 106
LTERM Output option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55
LTERM/USER option
  Autosignon options 92
  Signon options 106

M

masking
  TSS Argument Propagation feature 190
  TSS tables 189
  See also generic parameters
Max count field
  Logon options 63
Maximum sessions per userid option
  Autosignon options 92
  Signon options 106
maximum terminal count, establishing 63, 80
  instructions 63
message customization
  background 297
  edit commands 312
  instructions 312
Message delete option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55
message help index
  instructions for use 34
  overview 33
message notification at autologoff/autosignoff 144
MESSAGE primary command 33

Method
  Enhanced Command Security options 153
Method option
  Autosignon options 88
  Logon options 63
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55
MFS descriptors, adding and deleting 227
modifying descriptor lists 232
MSC
definition 446
MSC descriptors, adding and deleting 227
MSGDEL option
  Autosignon options 88
  Signon options 101
  Unsolicited Output options 55, 58
  See also UNSOLOUT, SIGNON, or AUTOSIGN
  TSS table
MSNAME
definition 446
MSNAME for remote LTERMs
  activating TSS table 49
MTO
definition 446
MTO, notification at autologoff/autosignoff 144
multiple signons per user ID
  Autosignon option 92
  Signon option 106
MVS system log 330

N

node
definition 447
NODE keyword for CHANGE command 255
Node name TSS table name
  Autosignon options 97
non-discardable message exit
  activation of ETA exit 164, 165
non-discardable message options
background 164
Default processing option 165
Do not send DFS555I 165
Do not USTOP transaction 165
non-discardable message Selection option 165
NONDISC TSS table name 167
processing flow 164
Transaction pseudo abend option 165
TSS argument option 167
TSS table processing 167
non-discardable message Selection option
non-discardable message options 165
NONDISC TSS table name
non-discardable message options 167
notification of autologoff/autosignoff 144
Number of cache buffers
  instructions for specifying 49

O

online help
  error messages 33
  field-level help 32
  message help index 33, 34
  panel-level help 32
online interface
  action bar 29
  action bar selections 31
  field value prompts 31
  headings 29
  online help 32
  online message help 33
  online message help index 34
  scrolling 30
  selection fields 29
online message help
  overview 33
  using 34
operator dump
  BMCLINK diagnostics 331
Optional User format name
  DFS3649A Message options 125
  DFS3650I Message options 136
Options library
  instructions for specifying 42
options library name
  before you begin 42
OS console, notification at autologoff/autosignoff 144
override hierarchy
  ALOT 141
  ASOT 141
  logoff at signoff 141
overview 256
  aaa 251, 256
  ASSIGN 251
  ASSIGN command 251
  ASSIGN enhancements 251
  commands 251, 256
  DISPLAY enhancements 256
  IMS commands 251, 286
  SECURE enhancements 286
overview IMS commands
  SECURE enhancements 286
overview of enhancements
  ASSIGN 251
  ASSIGN command 251
overview of ETA enhancements
  aaa 256
  DISPLAY command 256

P

panel-level help 32
panels
  IMS Storage Display panel 294
password 172
password message for password expiration 131
password, propagate from VTAM USERDATA 63, 71
  instructions to activate 63
preferences
  Cancel confirmation
    instructions 36
  colors
    instructions 39
  Delete confirmation
    instructions 36
  function keys
    instructions 40
  Refresh confirmation
    instructions 36
  Save confirmation
    instructions 36
  startup
    instructions 38
  prevent TSS table damage 191
primary commands
MESSAGE 33
Printer and Unsolicited Output feature 53
printers
dynamic creation 53
ETA printer override feature 251
problem determination documentation 333
Processing environments
Enhanced Command Security options 153
prompting 31
Propagate password to IMS option
Logon options 63
Propagate userid to IMS option
Logon options 63
Provide logon data for SLUP and 3600/Finance
devices option
Logon options 63
publications, related 13

R

RACF
defining RACF classes for Enhanced Command
Security 298
Enhanced Command Security 147, 148
RACROUTE macro 148
RACF resource class name
Enhanced Command Security options 153
RCNT
activating TSS table 49
definition 447
descriptors, adding and deleting 227
TSS table attributes and available options 204
RCNT TSS table name
instructions for specifying 49
reactivating exits 245
reclaiming space in a TSS data set 179, 181
Refresh confirmation
instructions for activating 36
refresh CPUID 172
refresh CPUID password 172
refresh feature

BMC CPU ID 172
command access profiles 299
Command Security options 322
CPU ID information
batch 412
IMSID options 172
IMSID options in an IMS control region 172
batch 412
overview 322
using from Refresh IMS panel 325
TSS table data in an IMS control region 172
batch 412
from TSS panels 224
using from Refresh IMS panel 325
TSS tables 172
using from Refresh IMS panels
CPUID data 325
IMS default ALOT interval 325
IMS default ASOT interval 325
IMS default Dead Letter Queue
interval 325
IMSID options 325
signon return codes 325
TSS tables 325
user messages 325
related publications 13
reloading entire Device Descriptor table
(DFSUDT0x)
instructions 241
reloading exits 247
remote LTERM
definition 447
remote LTERMs
activating TSS table 49
descriptors, adding and deleting 227
Remove EXCLUSIVE mode option
Signoff options
Dynamic terminals 115
Logoff options
Dynamic STSN devices 80
Static terminals 80
Signoff options
Static terminals 115
Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode option
Logoff options
Dynamic STSN devices 80
Static terminals 80
Signoff options
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove MFSTEST mode option  
Signoff options  
  Dynamic terminals 115  
Logoff options  
  Dynamic STSN devices 80  
  Static terminals 80  
Signoff options  
  Static terminals 115  
Remove PRESET mode option  
Signoff options  
  Dynamic terminals 115  
Logoff options  
  Dynamic STSN devices 80  
  Static terminals 80  
Signoff options  
  Static terminals 115  
Remove RESPONSE mode option  
Signoff options  
  Dynamic terminals 115  
Logoff options  
  Dynamic STSN devices 80  
  Static terminals 80  
Signoff options  
  Static terminals 115  
Remove TEST mode option  
Signoff options  
  Dynamic terminals 115  
Logoff options  
  Dynamic STSN devices 80  
  Static terminals 80  
Signoff options  
  Static terminals 115  
reorganizing a TSS data set 179, 181  
repairing TSS table damaged by multiple concurrent updates 225  
replacing TSS table argument values in batch 430  
RESLIB definition 447  
Resource sharing for ISC in Resource Manager IMS initialization options 169  
response mode option  
  Autosignon options 88  
  Signon options 101  
  Unsolicited Output options 55, 58  
  See also UNSOLOUT, SIGNON, or AUTOSIGN TSS  
restricting logon and/or signon privileges 286  
result length for TSS tables 191  
Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff option  
  Autosignon options 88  
  Signon options 101  
Return IMS user message  
  Enhanced Command Security options 153  

S  
sample configurations. See configurations  
Save confirmation  
  instructions 36  
Save library 1  
  instructions for specifying 42  
Save library 2  
  instructions for specifying 42  
Scan inactive conversations interval  
  timer driven options 159  
screen size  
  See also LOGONNOD or LOGONTYP TSS table  
Screen size  
  Logon options 71  
scrolling 30  
search methods, TSS tables 189  
searching and modifying a TSS table  
  batch 430  
SECURE command  
  ALLOW keywords and parameters 287  
  CLEAR keywords and parameters 288  
  DISABLE keywords and parameters 289  
  ENABLE keywords and parameters 290  
  overview 286  
  syntax 286  
SECURE enhancements  
  syntax 286  
security  
  internal ETA security  
    adding user access profiles 308  
    background 291  
Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0,  
  for LTERM(s) option  
  Autosignon options 88  
  Signon options 101  
Send message to IMS Master Terminal  
  Autosignoff notification  
    timeout options 144  
  Autologoff notification  
    timeout options 144  
Send message to the OS Console
Autologoff notification
timeout options 144
Autosignoff notification
timeout options 144
Send violation messages to IMS MTO
Enhanced Command Security options 153
Send violation messages to OS console
Enhanced Command Security options 153
session manager true node name support 63
Session manager true nodename support option
Logon options 63
Signoff exit
activation of ETA exit 113, 115
Signoff options
/DEQ messages option
Dynamic terminals 115
/EXIT all conversations option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
background 113
processing flow 113
Remove EXCLUSIVE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove MFSTEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove PRESET mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove TEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Signoff Selection option 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
TSS processing
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
Signoff Selection option
Signoff options 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
Send violation messages to IMS MTO
Enhanced Command Security options 153
Send violation messages to OS console
Enhanced Command Security options 153
session manager true node name support 63
Session manager true nodename support option
Logon options 63
Signoff exit
activation of ETA exit 113, 115
Signoff options
/DEQ messages option
Dynamic terminals 115
/EXIT all conversations option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
background 113
processing flow 113
Remove EXCLUSIVE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove MFSTEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove PRESET mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove TEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Signoff Selection option 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
TSS processing
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
Signoff Selection option
Signoff options 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
Send violation messages to IMS MTO
Enhanced Command Security options 153
Send violation messages to OS console
Enhanced Command Security options 153
session manager true node name support 63
Session manager true nodename support option
Logon options 63
Signoff exit
activation of ETA exit 113, 115
Signoff options
/DEQ messages option
Dynamic terminals 115
/EXIT all conversations option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
background 113
processing flow 113
Remove EXCLUSIVE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove Fast Path RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove MFSTEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove PRESET mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove RESPONSE mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Remove TEST mode option
Dynamic terminals 115
Static terminals 115
Signoff Selection option 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
TSS processing
Dynamic terminals 118
Static terminals 118
Signoff Selection option
Signoff options 115
SIGNOFF TSS table name
/DEQ messages from previous session(s) option 101
/EXIT conversations from previous session(s) option 101
Allow multiple signons per userid option 106
ASOT 101
Autosignoff 101
Bypass RACF authorization for conversations option 101
Bypass signon security for messages option 101
Deactivate response mode from previous session option 101
definition of Autosignon 99
Descriptor selection order 101
IMS response mode option 101
Include static terminal sessions in calculation option 106
instructions for specifying 101
Logoff at Autosignoff 101
LTERM Output option 101
LTERM/USER option 106
Maximum sessions per userid option 106
Message delete option 101
Method option 101
Retain USER/LTERM structure after signoff option 101
Select the IMS message switching exit, DFSCNTE0, for LTERM(s) option 101
Signon node name TSS table name 110
Signon security options 101
Signon userid TSS table name 110
Suffix length option 106
Suffix list option 106
Suffixing type option 106
Table 1 processing options 110
TSS argument option 110
TSS table, specifying options through activation 110
Signon security options
Signon options 101
SIGNON TSS table
activating 101
attributes and available options 197
creating 206
search processing options 110
See also TSS table utilities
Signon userid TSS table name
Signon options 110
signon, restricting with SECURE command 286
SLUP terminals
SLUP node deletion feature 255
SLUP terminals, logon data for 63, 71
activating feature that provides 63
SLUP terminals, logon data for 63
SPQB
definition 447
static devices
activating feature that allows ETA logon processing 63
Static terminal message replacement option
DFS2467I Message options 162
Static terminal user format name
DFS2467I Message options 162
Static terminals message replacement option by terminal type
DFS3649A Message options 125
DFS3650I Message options 136
status report
exits 248
TSS data set 184
storage dump
BMCLINK diagnostics 331
Suffix length option
Autosignon options 92
Signon options 106
Suffix list option
Autosignon options 92
Signon options 106
Suffixing type option
Autosignon options 92
Signon options 106
Suppress autosignon failure messages option
Autosignon options 88
syntax
ASSIGN command 252
ASSIGN enhancements 252
ASSIGNB 252
commands 252
DISPLAY enhancements 258
IMS commands 252, 258
syntax commands
DISPLAY enhancements 258
SECURE enhancements 286
syntax statement conventions 17
System Configuration form 336

T
Table 1 processing options
Logon options 74
Signon options 110
Table 2 processing options
Signon options 110
Logon options 74
table lookup. See TSS table
table lookup. See TSS table 139
terminal
definition 447
testing a TSS table
batch 431
online 214
timeout hierarchy 141
timeout intervals. See ALOT, ASOT, DLQT 141
timeout options
ALOT 144
ASOT 144
Autologoff 144
Autologoff notification
Send message to IMS Master Terminal 144
Send message to the OS Console 144
Autosignoff 144
Autosignoff notification
Send message to IMS Master Terminal 144
Send message to the OS Console 144
background 141
Logoff at Autosignoff 144
notification at autologoff/autosignoff 144
overriding ETO default by terminal type 144
See also ALOT, ASOT
timer driven options
(EXIT) held conversations when inactive
interval 159
(EXIT) non-held conversations when inactive
interval 159
Automatic /DEQ DEADQ users at checkpoint 159
background 159
Gather statistics interval 159
Scan inactive conversations interval 159
trace
BMCXLINK 302
trace features 328
TRANSACT 202
TRANSACT TSS table processing (successful) option
Unsolicited Output options 58
Transaction pseudo abend option
non-discardable message options 165
Translate Subsystem Services feature. See TSS
Translation Assist Exit 432
TSO/ISPF diagnostics 332
TSS
introduction 175
table level commands
LOAD 427
aaa 175
access methods 189
background on TSS tables 189
batch
data set update considerations 417
enqueues 418
processing 419
cache (look-aside) buffers
definition 189
calculating number of table blocks 206
concurrent updates of TSS tables
avoiding 191
repairing damage from 225
data set level commands
END 421
FORMAT 420
READ 421
definition 448
macros for creating user-defined tables 437
search methods for TSS tables 189
table entry level commands
ADD 429
DELETE 430
RENAME 430
REVISE 430
SET 431
TRANSLATE 431
table level commands
DEFINE 422
LIST 425
REMOVE 425
REPLACE 423
UNLOAD 427
Translation Assist Exit 432
types of tables and options for each type 191
user-defined TSS tables 437
wildcard masking
Argument Propagation feature 190
masking conventions 189
TSS argument option
Autosignon options 97
non-discardable message options 167
Signon options 110
TSS argument search order
  DFS3649A Message options 128
  DFS3650I Message options 139
TSS buffers
  refreshing options
    batch 412
TSS data set utilities
  allocating/formatting a TSS data set online 176
  backing up a TSS data set 187
  formatting a TSS data set
    batch 420
    online 176
  reorganizing a TSS data set 179, 181
  status report for TSS data set 184
TSS keyword for CHANGE command 255
TSS options
  DFS3649A Message options 120
  DFS3650I Message options 131
  Enhanced Command Security options 152
  Logoff options 77
  Logon options 61
  non-discordable message options 164
  Signon options 113
TSS Options
  Autosignon options 85
  Signon options 99
  Unsolicited Output features 53
TSS processing
  Logoff options
    Dynamic STSN devices 83
    Static terminals 83
  Signoff options
    Dynamic terminals 118
    Static terminals 118
TSS search argument
  Enhanced Command Security options 157
TSS table 53, 71, 74, 88, 101, 120, 128, 131, 157, 390, 391
  Autosignon
    attributes and available options 195
  logon
    attributes and available options 192
  signon
    attributes and available options 197
  Argument Propagation Feature 190
  Autosignon
    table processing option 97
  Autosignon options
    activating 88
  DFS3649A
    activating 122
    attributes and available options 199
    configuration, sample 392
  DFS3649A Message
    activating 128
  DFS3650I
    activating 133
    attributes and available options 200
  DFS3650I Message
    activating 139
  Enhanced Command Security
    activating 157
  logoff
    processing flow 77
  Logoff
    attributes and available options 194, 198
  logon
    activating 74
    processing flow 61
    search processing options 74
    table search order 74
  non-discordable message options
    processing flow 164
  RCNT
    activating 49
    attributes and available options 204
    refreshing data in an IMS control region 172
      from Refresh IMS panel 325
      from TSS panels 224
  Signoff
    processing flow 113
  Signon
    search processing options 110
  Signon options
    activating 101
  Unsolicited Output and Printer feature
unknown destinations
controlling creation of 55
See also Unsolicited Output and Printer feature
unknown destinations, controlling creation of
background 53
system-wide options 55, 58
unloading a TSS table
batch 427
online 218
Unsolicited Output and Printer feature 55, 58
activating a TSS table 58
activating system-wide options 55, 58
background 53
sample configuration 390
sample configurations 390
See also configurations
See also TSS table
unsolicited output exit
activation of ETA exit 58
macro for creating ETA exit 438
Unsolicited Output exit
activation of ETA exit 55
Unsolicited Output feature
definition 448
Unsolicited Output options
IMS response mode option 55
LTERM Output option 55
Message delete option 55
Method option 55
TRANSACT TSS table processing (successful) option 58
TSS table processing (successful) option 58
TSS table processing (successful) option 58
Unknown destination option 55
Unsolicited output TRANSACT TSS table name 58
Unsolicited output TSS table name 58
Unsolicited output TRANSACT TSS table name
Unsolicited Output options 58
Unsolicited output TRANSACT TSS table name
Unsolicited Output options 58
UNSOLOUT 202
UNSOLOUT TSS table
activating 58
attributes and available options 202
configuration, sample 390
UNSOLOUT TSS table creating. See TSS table utilities
updating exits available to IMS 247
UPDS
definition 448
Use format in Signon RC message module
DFS3649A Message options 125
Use RACF userid for autosignon option
SLU-2 devices
Autosignon options 88
3270 devices
Autosignon options 88
Finance devices
Autosignon options 88
SLU-1 devices
Autosignon options 88
SLU-P devices
Autosignon options 88
USER
definition 448
USER (SPQB)
MSGDEL option 55, 58
Autosignon options 88
Signon options 101
Unsolicited Output options 55, 58
name same as user ID or node name
Autosignon option 92
Signon option 106
response mode option 55, 58
Autosignon options 88
Signon options 101
Unsolicited Output options 55, 58
See also TSS UNSOLOUT, SIGNON, or AUTOSIGN TSS table
user access profile
definition 448
user access profiles
adding 308
definition 291
See also the installation guide
USER descriptor
adding and deleting through ETA 227
Autosignon options 88
Signon options 101
user format
replacing the DFS2467I message 162
replacing the DFS3649A message 122
replacing the DFS3650I message 133
user ID
definition 448
multiple signons per
Autosignon option 92
Signon option 106
propagate from VTAM USERDATA 63
user message
    creation 297, 312
    replacing the DFS2467I message 162
    replacing the DFS3649A message 122
    replacing the DFS3650I message 133
user-defined TSS tables 437
Userid TSS table name
    Autosignon options 97
utility features
    IMS storage and zap 292, 310
    refresh feature 322, 325
    See also TSS table utilities

V
value prompts 31
verifying descriptor list syntax 234
VTAM Generic Resource processing
    IMS initialization options 169
VTAM USERDATA
    delimiters for keywords 63, 92, 106
    initial format name 63
    initial transaction schedule 63
    propagate password data to IMS 63, 71
    propagate user ID to IMS 63, 71
    session manager true node name support 63

W
wildcard masking
    IMS commands. See generic parameters 251
    TSS Argument Propagation feature 190
    TSS tables 189
    worksheet for designing system configurations 336

X
XCF Group
    instructions for specifying 44
XRF
    alternate IMSID 44
    IMSID Options 44

Z
zapping IMS storage 310